

THE
CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN
INSTRUCTED

In the Sacraments, Sacrifice, Ceremonies,
and Observances of the CHURCH.

By Way of

QUESTION and ANSWER.

By R... C.....



L O N D O N :

Printed in the YEAR M.DCC.LIII.

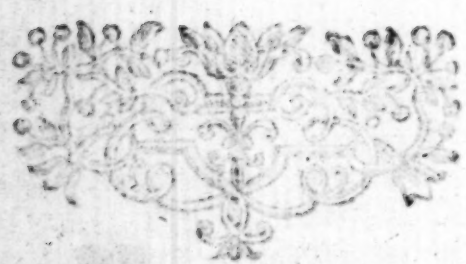
CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN

INSTITUTION

In the Faculties, Sciences, Ceremonies,
and Observances of the Church.

By Wm. of

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS.



LONDON:

Printed in the Year M.DCC.LII.



P



or
not
som
Mi
an
The
of
rect
of
App
pass
Yea
tati
in
the
Pag
one
T
agai
whi
mak



THE
P R E F A C E.



THE Design of the following Sheets being to explain the Doctrine and Ceremonies of the Catholick Church, and to vindicate the same from the Misrepresentations of our Adversaries, the Reader, whether Catholick or Protestant, may reasonably expect that I should not send them abroad into the World, without taking some notice of a late Performance of Dr. *Conyers Middleton*, entitled, *A Letter from Rome, shewing an exact Conformity between Popery and Paganism*; or, *The Religion of the present Romans derived from that of their heathen Ancestors*. This being a Work directly levelled against some Part of the Ceremonies of the Church, and having been received with great Applause by many in the Nation, so as to have passed through three Editions in the Space of a few Years. 'Tis to comply with so reasonable an Expectation, that I have determined to employ my Preface in making some Animadversions upon this Letter of the Doctor; to which, tho' consisting of seventy Pages in *Quarto*, I hope, with the Help of God, in one short Sheet to give a full and satisfactory Answer.

The chief Particulars which the Doctor objects against in the Religion of *modern Rome*, and upon which he grounds the Parallel which he pretends to make between Popery and Paganism, are these: 1st,

The Use of Incense and Perfumes in Churches; 2^{dly}, The Use of Holy Water; 3^{dly}, The Burning of Lamps and Candles; 4^{thly}, Offerings or votive Gifts; 5^{thly}, Images, which he jumbles together with the Veneration of the Saints; 6^{thly}, Chappels on the Way-side for the Devotion of Travellers, Crosses, and sometimes Chappels upon Hills; 7^{thly}, Processions; 8^{thly}, Miracles, with which, it seems, he is very much offended wherever he meets with them; and therefore he dwells longer upon that Subject than any other. All these Things he pretends to discover in the Religion of the old *Pagans*; and therefore imagines he has a Right to conclude, that the modern *Romans* have derived their whole Religion from them.

Before I proceed to examine these Particulars, and to answer the Doctor's Objections against them, I cannot but take notice of a Piece of foul Play in him, unworthy of that Candour of which he makes Profession, and which he acknowledges he met with in all those whom he had the Honour to converse with at *Rome*: Which is, that having undertaken in his Title-page to shew an *exact Conformity* between the Religion of the present *Romans* and that of their *Pagan* Ancestors, and in the Body of his Book having more than once given the Preference to the latter, yet in drawing his Parallel he has been so dissingenuous as to dissemble, on the one Side, all the grosser Superstitions of the *Pagans*, and for the most Part only to take notice of certain Observances, which were no otherwise criminal than in being applied to the Worship of false Gods; and on the other Side, has quite pass'd over in Silence the most substantial Parts of the Religion of the present *Romans*, and only cavil'd at some Ceremonies or Matters of less Importance. For can the Doctor really think, that the Belief of the Scripture, and of the three Creeds, is no Part of the Religion of *Rome*? Is not

The P R E F A C E.

v

not the one, true and living God worshipped there in three Persons, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost? Does not the People universally believe in *Jesus Christ*? Is not the Eucharistick Sacrifice offered in all their Churches, in Memory of his Death and Passion? Is not the Word of God preached amongst them; the divine Office, consisting of Psalms, Scripture-Lessons, &c. daily sung; the Sacraments frequented, &c.? And which of all these Things has been derived to the modern *Romans* from their heathen Ancestors? But it was not for the Doctor's Purpose to take any notice of any of these Things, no not so much as even of the Articles of the Profession of Faith published by Pope *Pius IV.* which he very well knows to be the Standard of what he calls *Popery*, and yet has not so much as offered to shew any Conformity in any one of them (excepting the Article of *Saints* and their *Images*, which he grossly misrepresents) with the Doctrine or Practice of the *Pagans*. To such Shifts as these are Persons unhappily driven, who are resolved to maintain a bad Cause.

But let us see what these gross Superstitions are upon which the Doctor grounds his Charge against the modern *Romans*, and would have his Readers believe they are no better than *Pagans*. In the first Place, he instances in the Use of *Incense* in Churches; and we may presume he is too well acquainted with the Rules of Rhetorick, not to rank in the Front some of those which he esteems his strongest Arguments: So that he looks upon this as one of the most notorious Instances of heathenish Superstition. But has he any Thing to urge against it from Scripture, the only Rule of a Protestant's Faith? Not one single Word. On the contrary, if he had been as well read in the Scriptures, as he would seem to be in the heathen Poets, he would have found the Use of Incense in the Temple of God, and that by

God's own Ordinance *, in Records of a far more ancient Date than any he can produce for the Use of it among the Heathens, who in this, as in many other Things, did but mimick the sacred Ceremonies prescribed in the Law of God. And certainly a Person that has been but moderately versed in the sacred Writings, will be surpris'd to find the Use of *Incense* ranked by the Doctor amongst heathenish Rites, since it is so frequently mentioned with Honour in God's Holy Word; as when the *Psalmist* desires that his *Prayer* may ascend as *Incense* in the Sight of God, *Psalm* cxli. 2. as when the Prophet *Malachi* (as his Words are rendered in the Protestant Bible) foretells, *Chap.* i. 11. that in the Church of *Christ* *Incense* shall be offered in every Place to God's Holy Name; as when *St. John* in the *Revelation*, *Chap.* v. 8. and *Chap.* viii. 4, &c. represents to us Odours and *Incense* burning before God in the heavenly *Jerusalem*. For, allowing these Texts to be figurative, yet we are not to suppose that the sacred Penmen would describe to us the Service either of the militant or triumphant Church, by Figures borrowed from heathenish Superstition. As for what the Doctor has alledged against the Use of *Incense* out of the Acts of the Martyrs, who chose rather to die than to offer *Incense* to false Gods, and out of the Law of *Theodosius*, which confiscates the Places in which the *Pagans* had offered *Incense* to their Deities, he could not but know, that all this was utterly foreign to his Purpose: But if he had a Mind to be informed of the Antiquity of the Ceremonial Use of *Incense* amongst the Christians, he might have found it in the most ancient Liturgies, and even in the very Canons attributed to the Apostles, *Can.* 3.

The next Thing the Doctor objects against as heathenish, is the Use of *Holy Water*, which he pre-

* See *Exod.* xxx. 7, 8. xl. 27. *Levit.* xvi. 12, &c.

tends to derive from the Heathens, because he finds in his Poets, that the *Pagans* of old, in entering into their Temples, used to be sprinkled with *Water*; and he thinks he has discovered, in some Scraps of old *Greek* Verses, that there was Salt mingled with this *Water*; and, which is still a more wonderful Discovery, in poring upon old Medals, he imagines he has found out something not unlike a *Sprinkling-brush* amongst the Things used by the *Pagan* Priests. But what a Pity it is, that, amongst all these great Discoveries, he had not met with any Account of the Heathens ever making Use of *Water sanctified by the Word of God and Prayer, in the Name, and by the Virtue of Jesus Christ*: For this is what we call *Holy Water*; and this the *Pagans* never used. As for the rest, we find Mention of *Holy Water*, that is, *Water sanctified for Religious Uses*, in the most sacred Records of the divine Law, long before the Heathens abused it to their Superstition: See *Numb.* xix. And the Doctor might with full as good a Grace have proved the Sacrament of Baptism to be a heathenish Practice, from the *Pagans* Use of *Water* in their Temples, as have alledged it against *Holy Water*; which is with us a Memorial of our Baptism, as that in the old Law was a Figure of it. As for the yearly Festival, which the Doctor says is celebrated with great Solemnity in the Month of *January*, and is called the *Benediction of Horses*, I never yet met with it in the *Roman Kalendar*; and tho' I have spent the greatest Part of my Life abroad, never saw, nor heard of any such Ceremony as that which he pretends is practised upon that Day by the Monks of *St. Anthony* near *St. Mary Major* in *Rome*. But however this be, we may hope there is nothing heathenish in this Ceremony, since the Doctor, who is so good a Christian, procured, tho' it was, as he says, at the Expence of Eighteen-pence, his own Horses to be bless'd by these good Monks, p. 20.

The third Thing which the Doctor quarrels with, as derived from the Heathens, is the Burning of Lamps before the Altars, and setting up Wax-Candles to burn in the Time of Divine Service. This, he says, was first introduced by the *Egyptians*; for which he quotes, in the Margin, *Clement of Alexandria, Stromat. L. i. C. 16.* But this Author says no such Thing; and the true Original of setting up Lights, or burning Lamps in Temples, is to be found in the Law of God, *Exod. xxv. xxvii. and xl.* And as the Devil affected to have his Temples, Altars, Priests, Sacrifices, and all other Things which were used in the Worship of the true God, so no Wonder that he procured also to have Lamps set up in his Temples, in Imitation of those which by the Law of God were appointed to burn before the Sanctuary. The Doctor therefore is very much mistaken, when he too hastily concludes that every Ceremony used by the Heathens in the Worship of their false Gods is consequently heathenish, and as such ought to be banished from the Worship of the true God; since the greatest Part of these Ceremonies were indeed borrowed by the Heathens from the Worship of the true God.

Next to the *Lamps* or *Wax Lights* burning before the Altars, he falls upon the Number of *Offerings* or *votive Gifts* hung up, in Testimony of *Cures* or *Deliverances*, around the Altars, or the Shrines of the Saints: All which he takes for downright Heathenism, because he finds the Footsteps of the like Offerings hung up in the Temples of the Heathens. But here let him take notice, once for all, that Practices in themselves innocent, are not render'd unlawful by having been abused by the Heathens to their Superstition; that all that was heathenish in this Case was the referring and dedicating these Things to the Honour of their false Deities; and that it cannot be disagreeable to the true and living God, that such

as believe they have received Favours from him by the Prayers of his Saints, should make a publick Acknowledgment of it.

The Doctor could not but be sensible, that the Things which he has hitherto objected against had nothing heathenish in their Nature, and that not one of them was ever condemned or prohibited by the Law of God: And therefore, since Truth would furnish him with no Arms in Order to make out his Charge of Idolatry and heathenish Superstition, in which he pretends that modern *Rome* equals or exceeds her *Pagan* Ancestors, he is forced to call in to his Assistance Misrepresentation and Slander. For what is it else but the grossest *Misrepresentation* and downright *Slander* to charge the Church of *Rome*, as he does, p. 29. of the *finishing Act* and *last Scene* of genuine Idolatry, in *Crowds* of bigot *Votaries* prostrating themselves before some Image of Wood or Stone, and paying divine Honours to an Idol of their own erecting? The Doctor should have remember'd here what he promised in his Preface, viz. to produce, for what he should charge upon us, such Vouchers as we ourselves would allow to be authentick. Instead of which we are, it seems, upon his bare Word, without either Proof or Witness, to believe a Charge which in itself is highly improbable, and which every one, that is acquainted with the Doctrine and Practice of the Catholick Church, knows to be absolutely false. The second Council of *Nice*, to which the Council of *Trent* refers in the Decree concerning Images, declares, that divine Honour, *λατρεία*, is not to be given them, *Act* vii; and the Council of *Trent*, *Sess.* 25. declares, that we are not to believe there is any Divinity or Virtue in them, for which they are to be worshipped; that we are not to pray to them, nor put our Trust in them. And every Child amongst us knows, that if we keep with Respect the Images or Pictures of *Christ* and his Saints,

'tis not to make them our Gods, as the Heathens did their Idols, nor to give them the Honour that belongs to God; but, by the Honour we shew to the Memorials, to express our Esteem, Love and Veneration for the Persons represented by them, and to use them as Helps to raise our Thoughts and Affections to heavenly Things.

But, to make out the easier this Charge of Idolatry against us, the Doctor has made an important Discovery, which he fathers upon St. *Jerome*, tho' indeed 'tis a Brat of his own; which is, that all Images of the Dead are Idols, and consequently are liable to all those Censures which in the Scripture, in the Fathers, and in the Laws of Christian Emperors, are pronounced against *Idols*. An important Discovery indeed! by which it appears, that, after all the Pretences of his own Church to a thorough Reformation, she has not yet got rid of *Idols*, but has them every where standing, and new ones daily erected, in spite of the Law of God; and that not only in every private House, inhabited by her Children (scarce one of which is found without some Image or Picture of the Dead) but also in her publick Places, and in her very Churches, out of which tho' she has generally removed the Images of *Christ* (which 'tis hoped the Doctor will not look upon to be *Idols*, if he believes the Resurrection of his Redeemer) yet she has brought in, in their stead, the Images of *Moses* and *Aaron*, who are certainly dead; and; what is worse still, has introduced dead Lions and Unicorns into the Sanctuary, in Place of the Cross of *Christ*; tho' this also of late has been erected upon the Top of the chief Church of the Kingdom, surrounded with many other of the Doctor's *Idols*, to the great Offence of the *Puritans*, who are the only People that will thank the Doctor for the Pains he has been at to furnish them with Arms against the establish'd Church. Tho' 'tis to be feared, if they

they take for good the Doctor's Definition of an *Idol*, their Zeal against Idolatry may raise some Scruple in them, with Relation to the Images of Kings deceased, which they carry in their Pockets, or hoard up in their Bags, and which, 'tis thought, they worship more than either the living King or any Deity whatsoever.

What then is the real Difference between *Idols* (*Lat. Simulachra*) and those *Images* or Pictures which we have in our Churches? It is this, that *Idols*, according to the Ecclesiastical Use of the Word, adopted by the Holy Fathers and all Antiquity, are only such *Images* as are set up for Gods, and honoured as such; or in which some Divinity or Power is believed to reside by their Worshippers, who accordingly offer Prayers and Sacrifice to them; and put their Trust in them. Such were the *Idols* of the *Gentiles*, and such were those *Images of the Dead*, of which St. *Jerome* speaks [*in Cap. 37. Isaia*]: viz. the Gods of those Nations which *Senacherib* and his Predecessors the *Affyrian* Kings had destroy'd; which, having been no better than the Images of Men doubly dead, were by *Senacherib* and his Servants foolishly and impiously compared to the true and living God: So that 'tis true enough that *these Idols were Images of the Dead*, which is all that St. *Jerome* asserts*; but 'tis not true, that all Images of the Dead are *Idols*, which is what Dr. *Middleton* would infer. I shall only add, with Relation to St. *Jerome*, that he expressly affirms, that the Saints are not to be called dead, but *living*; and therefore their Images are out of the Question, *L. contra Vigilant. Sancti non appellantur mortui sed viventes.*

“ But our Notion of the *Idolatry* of modern Rome
 “ (says the Doctor, p. 31.) will be much heighten'd.
 “ still and confirm'd, as oft as we follow them into
 “ those *Temples* and to those very *Altars* which were:

* *Quæ. Idola intelligimus Imagines mortuorum, in Cap. 37. Isaia.*

“ built.

“ built originally, and dedicated by their *heathen*
 “ *Ancestors* the *old Romans*, to the Honour of their
 “ *Pagan Deities*; where we shall hardly see any
 “ other Alteration than the Shrine of some *old Hero*
 “ filled now by the meaner Statue of some *modern*
 “ *Saint*.” There is another trifling Difference,
 which he does not think worth while to take notice
 of; which is, that all these Temples are now dedi-
 cated to the Service of the true and living God;
 that the Word of God is there preached, the divine
 Praises sung, and the great Eucharistick Sacrifice,
 the Memorial of the Passion of *Jesus Christ*, daily
 celebrated; whereas before they were dedicated to
 the Worship of the Devil.

But, besides this, the Doctor cannot be ignorant,
 that the *modern Roman Altars* are not the same as
 those the Heathens made Use of for their Sacrifices;
 that the Image of *Christ* crucified is placed upon all
 our Altars, not to be worshipped as a God, like those
 Idols, which he calls the *Shrines of his old Heroes*,
 but as a Memorial of *Christ's* Passion; that the
 Churches, tho' called by the Names of the Saints
 whose Relicks are there repositied, or Memory cele-
 brated, are not erected to the Saints, much less to
 their Images, but to the God of the Saints; that
 our Devotion to the Saints goes no farther than the
 desiring their Prayers; and that their Pictures or
 Images are no more with us than their *Memorials*,
 which we respect for their Sakes.

But the Doctor, it seems, is offended that the
Pantheon and other Temples of the *Pagans* have
 been changed into Churches of the blessed Virgin
 and the Saints; and thinks that the *old Possessors* (the
 heathen Deities) had a better Title to them than
 the Mother of *Christ* or his Martyrs; and declares,
 that he should be much more inclined to pay his
 Devotion to a *Romulus* or *Antonine*, than to (the
 illustrious Martyrs) *Laurence* or *Damian*, p. 33, 34.

I sup-

I suppose, by the same Rule, he must take it very ill to find so many Popish Churches, nigher home, changed into Protestant Temples, without so much as taking the Pains to new christen them: So that, without going to *Rome*, we may find a *Laurence*, an *Alban*, and a great Number of other *Romish* Saints, in the very Heart of *London*. For since he openly declares, that the *Pagan* Deities had a juster Title to Religious Veneration than any of these Saints, consequently a Church of *St. Laurence* must needs give him more Offence than a Temple of *Bacchus*.

But some may possibly apprehend, from the Way that the Doctor speaks of the Martyrs of *Christ*, that he is no greater Friend to Christianity in general than he is to Popery: For tho' some ancient Hereticks have objected of old to the Catholick Church, as he now does, that we had but changed our Idols in worshipping the Saints instead of the *Pagan* Deities (which was the Objection of *Vigilantius* and of *Faustus* the *Manichæan*, as we learn from the Writings of *St. Jerome* against *Vigilantius*, and of *St. Augustine* against *Faustus*, L. 20. C. 21.) yet no one, that pretended to the Name of Christian, ever ventured to prefer the *Pagan* Deities before the Martyrs of *Christ*. This was an Extravagance that none but *Julian* the Apostate was capable of, from whom the Doctor has copied it. See *St. Cyril* of *Alexandria*, L. 6. *contra Julianum*.

As to what he tells us upon *Hearsay*, that some of the Images of the Saints were originally Statues of the *Pagan* Deities, and others design'd by the Sculptors or Painters for the Representations of their own Mistresses; till he brings some better Authority for it, than a 'Tis said, we shall not think it worth the while to take any notice of it. For if, in Things that he positively asserts, he makes no scruple of advancing notorious Untruths, as when
he

he tells us, p. 33. that many of the *Romish* Saints were never heard of but in our *Legends*; and that many more have no other Merit but that of raising Rebellions in Defence of their Idols, and throwing whole Kingdoms into Convulsions, for the Sake of some gainful Imposture: If, I say, in such Things as these, which he affirms to be certain, he advances such Falsehoods, who will venture to believe what he tells only upon Hearsay?

His pretending to derive the Name of *St. Orestes* from Mount *Soracte* is ridiculous beyond Measure: And his suspecting that some who are honour'd as Martyrs were originally no others than the Heathen Deities, by Reason of some Affinity which he discovers in their Names, is a groundless Suspicion; as any one will be convinced that is not entirely a Stranger to ancient Church-History; in which we find, by innumerable Instances, that as a great Part of the Primitive Saints and Martyrs had been Converts from Paganism, so a great many of their Names had no small Affinity with those of the Heathenish Deities; and sometimes were the very same; as in the *New Testament* itself we find a *Dionysius*, *Acts* xvii. 34. which is the *Greek* Name of *Bacchus*; and a *Hermes*, *Rom.* xvi. 14. which is the *Greek* Name of *Mercury*.

As to what he writes of *Julia Evodia*, no such Saint was ever honour'd in our Church, much less any *St. Viar*; so that those petty Stories, like the Inscriptions which he alledges, which are the Works of private Persons without any Authority, are not worth our Notice; no more than *Usher's* Conjecture concerning *St. Amphibalus*, or *Mabillon's* concerning *St. Veronica*: For, allowing them both to be as well grounded as the Doctor can desire, it will only follow that there has been a Mistake in the Name of the Ecclesiastick harbour'd by *St. Alban*; and that of the pious Woman, on whose Handkerchief

chief our Saviour imprinted the Image of his Face. But after all, neither the one nor the other were ever canoniz'd by the Church, nor are their Names found in the *Roman Martyrology*.

I cannot comprehend why the Doctor, p. 44. should bring in the *Adoration of the Host*, which he calls the *principal Part of Worship*, and the *distinguishing Article of Faith in the Creed of modern Rome*; of which he confesses he cannot find *the least Resemblance or Similitude in any Part of the Pagan Worship*; unless it were to disprove that *exact Conformity*, which in his Title Page he had promised to prove betwixt Popery and Paganism; or rather to make Way for alledging against us the Authority of *Tully*, which he prefers before that of the Apostles and Evangelists, of the Absurdity of believing that to be God which we receive under the Sacramental Veils: An Absurdity, which the Doctor could have had no room to have objected to us, had he not forgot his own Catechism, which inform'd him, that *the Body and Blood of Christ are verily and indeed taken and received by the Faithful in the Lord's Supper*. For if the Faithful in this System may not be said to feed upon their God, neither can they in the System of Transubstantiation.

But now the Doctor is pleas'd to leave the Churches, and to make an Excursion into the Country, *the whole Face of which*, as he is pleas'd to tell us, p. 44. *has the visible Characters of Paganism upon it*; because of the little Chappels which frequently occur upon the Way, where Travellers often kneel down to say a Prayer; and because of the many Crosses every where erected. And who will dare presume after this to open his Mouth in Favour of Popery, when he understands that the Doctor has demonstrated, by what he has discover'd in his Travels, that all Papists are Pagans; because their very Travellers are so superstitious as sometimes to kneel down
and

and say a Prayer before a Country Chappel, where they find some Memorial of *Christ's* Passion; and because they have every where erected that Antichristian Standard the Cross of *Christ*? But what is still more *heathenish* in the Doctor's Eyes, is, that these little Oratories or Crosses are sometimes under *Trees*, and sometimes upon the Top of *Hills*, which he ingeniously interprets to be the *High Places* condemn'd in the *Old Testament*. But the Truth is, and all Papists are convinced of it, that a Place is neither better nor worse for divine Worship, because it is on a high Place or low; near *Trees*, or at a Distance from them: And what was condemn'd of old in the *High Places* mention'd in the Scripture, was not their being upon *Hills*, for God is no less the God of the Mountains than of the Valleys; and his Temple in *Jerusalem* was built upon a Hill, viz. on Mount *Moriah*, 2 *Chron.* iii. 1. but they were condemn'd because the Worship there exhibited was either *heathenish* or *schismatical*: That it, was either given to *strange Gods*; or if to the God of *Israel*, was given contrary to his Appointment, who had forbidden Sacrifice to be offer'd in any other Places but in his Temple at *Jerusalem*. See *Deut.* xii. 5, 11, 13, 14.

From the Country the Doctor returns again to the Towns, and there quarrels with the Images and Altars, which he pretends to meet with every where, and which he takes to be visible Marks of Paganism: But were the old Pagans to come to Life again, and to understand whose Images these are, viz. of *Jesus Christ*, of his Blessed Mother, of his Apostles and Martyrs, by whose Preaching, Labours and Blood, Paganish Superstition was banish'd out of the World, and who upon that Account are now honour'd, they would be far from being of the Doctor's Mind, and would look upon those Images

Images as evident Proofs of these People being Christians, who shew so much Regard to *Christ* and his Saints,

But in the Towns the Doctor is also offended with Processions, which, as he is pleased to say, are seen on every Festival of the Virgin, or other Romish Saint, which he supposes to be the *Ευρια και πομπαι και χοροί*, Sacrifices, Poms and Dances mention'd by *Plutarch* in *Numa*, p. 16. and concludes, that these Processions must needs be heathenish, the more because he finds in *Apuleius* an Account of something like a Procession perform'd by the Heathens in Honour of their Gods. But the Doctor might have found an Account of a religious Procession in an Author much more ancient than *Apuleius*, amongst the Worshippers of the true God, if he would have consulted 2 *Sam.* vi. I fear the Doctor has no great Opinion of this Kind of Monuments of Antiquity; the less, because he finds therein frequent Mention of Miracles, which are Things he can never digest, wherever he meets them.

But the Pagans, it seems, pretended to Miracles, and therefore the Romish Religion, which pretends to Miracles, must needs be Paganish. It is a Pity the Doctor did not here speak out in Favour of his Friends the Free-thinkers, and argue thus: The Pagans pretended to build their Religion upon Miracles; therefore the Jewish Religion of Old and the Christian now, both which appeal to Miracles as their first and chief Foundation, are no better grounded than Paganism. But even in the Instances which the Doctor alledges (and we may be sure he has pick'd out such as he thought most for his Purpose,) it is easy to take Notice that the Miracles pretended to by the Pagans had no probable Grounds to support them, no Number of Witnesses to attest them, no contemporary Writers to vouch for them, but, as in the Case of the Victory supposed

supposed to have been gained over the *Latins* by the Assistance of *Castor* and *Pollux*, all was built upon a popular Opinion, or the Testimony of one or two that pretended to have seen those Deities; which was greedily swallowed by the General and the Senate, as a Token of the Divine Favour, who thereupon erected a Temple to them. Whereas, in the Case which the Doctor supposes to be parallel to this, of the Victories gain'd against the Infidels in the Holy Wars, by the Assistance of the Martyrs, these Saints, as appears by what he has in the Margin, were seen by both the Christian and Infidel Army; and the History of it was written, as we learn from the Doctor himself, by an Eye-Witness.

But whether the Miracles which he has pitch'd upon for the Subject of his Ridicule be true or false, there is nothing at least heathenish in them, and consequently nothing that can be of any Service to him to make out the *exact* Conformity, which he pretends to demonstrate, between *Popery* and *Paganism*. In the mean Time, the Doctor is not ignorant, that 'tis not upon such Things, as most of those are, which he alledges, that we lay any Stress; neither have we any Need to appeal to them; for God has been pleas'd in every Age to work far more evident Miracles in his Church, by the Ministry of his Saints; in raising the Dead to Life, in curing the Blind and the Lame, in casting out Devils, in healing in a Moment inveterate Diseases, and the like stupendous Works of his Power, attested by the most authentick Monuments, and very frequently (as may be seen in the *Acts of the Canonizations of the Saints*) by the Depositions of innumerable Eye-Witnesses, examin'd upon Oath; and by the publick Notoriety of the Facts; which Kind of Miracles, so authentically attested, will be to all Ages, a standing Evidence, that the Church,
in

in whose Communion they have all been wrought, is not that idolatrous *Pagan* Church which the Doctor pretends, but the true Spouse of *Christ*; which alone has inherited in all Ages that Promise which her Lord made at his Departure, St. *John* xiv. 12, 13. *Verily, verily, I say unto you, he that believeth on me, the Works that I do shall he do also, and greater Works than these shall he do, because I go unto my Father. And whatsoever ye shall ask in my Name, that will I do.*

And here I might take my Leave of the Doctor, for what he adds, p. 65, &c. to derive the *Church-Sanctuaries* from the *Asylum* open'd by *Romulus* to receive Fugitives, the Authority of the *Pope* from the *Pagan Pontiff*, and the Religious Orders from the Colleges of the *Augurs*, *Salii*, &c. is so very weak, that it would be trifling away my Time to take any Notice of it. But, before we part, I must put the Doctor and his Friends in Mind that some People will naturally infer, from what he imagines he has so fully proved, *viz.* that *Popery* and *Paganism* stand upon the same Bottom, and that one is no better than the other; they will infer, I say, that the Orders which his Church pretends to have by Succession from the Church of *Rome*, are no more valid than if they proceeded from an *Indian Brachman*, or *Mahometan Dervise*; [Chandler's Sermon. p. 36.]. And by the self-same Way of arguing, by which he pretends to demonstrate an exact Conformity between the Religion of the present *Romans* and that of their heathen Ancestors, these same Gentlemen will, with a much fairer Shew of Probability, prove an exact Conformity between the Religion by Law establish'd, and *Popery*. The Consequence of which will be, if the Doctor be not mistaken in his Parallel, that *English* Protestantism is no better than heathenish Idolatry.

But

But that I may not seem to say this without Reason, let us suppose that a *Ch—r*, or some other of the same Kidney, should take it into his Head to charge the Church by Law establish'd with Popery; and to this Purpose should heap together all that he could of Ceremonies, Observances, &c. which Protestants have retain'd from the old Religion, and in one of his learned Declamations deliver himself as follows to his dissenting Auditory.

“ Beware, my dear Beloved, of those People
 “ that call themselves the *Church of England*: For
 “ their Religion is wholly derived from that of
 “ their *Romish* Ancestors, and has an exact Con-
 “ formity, or Uniformity rather, with Popery, and
 “ consequently with Paganism, from which, as
 “ Dr. *Middleton* has lately demonstrated, the Pa-
 “ pists have borrowed their whole Religion. Now
 “ mark ye, my Beloved, how plainly I shall prove
 “ that these People who call themselves Protestants,
 “ have taken their whole Religion from the Pa-
 “ pists.

“ 1st, Their *Churches* are the very same which
 “ were originally built by their Popish Ancestors,
 “ and are still dedicated to the same *Popish Saints*,
 “ as formerly they were; tho' one of their own
 “ Divines plainly tells them, they had better have
 “ dedicated them to *Bacchus* or *Venus*. Now of
 “ all the Honours that the Papists have ever given
 “ to their Saints, this of dedicating Temples to them
 “ was certainly the greatest; far greater than that
 “ of kissing their Relicks, or desiring their Prayers;
 “ and consequently, if the Church of *Rome* was
 “ ever guilty of Idolatry in Relation to the Saints,
 “ her Daughter the Church of *England* stands
 “ guilty of the same, which has ten Churches de-
 “ dicated to *Mary* for one dedicated to *Christ*.

“ 2^{dly}, In their Churches they have *Altars* too
 “ like the Papists; and what should *Altars* do
 “ there,

“ there, if they did not offer *Sacrifice* like the Pa-
“ pists? To these Altars they cringe and bow;
“ which is giving *religious Honour*, which God has
“ appropriated to himself, to *insensible Creatures*, and
“ therefore is no better than downright Idolatry.
“ In many Places they have over these Altars *Images*
“ and *Pictures*, like the Papists, in Spight of the
“ second Commandment. And tho’ they are pleas’d
“ to tell us that they worship them not, yet what
“ can we think when we see them perpetually bow-
“ ing down to that which is indeed no more than
“ an *Image*, viz. *the Name of Jesus*, which, of all
“ *Images of Christ*, has the least of solid Substance
“ in it, as being only form’d in the Air by the
“ empty Sound of the two Syllables of his Name.
“ But what Respect they have for *Images* we may
“ judge by that which they shew to the *Cross*, which
“ they have lately erected in the *highest Place* of the
“ capital City of the Kingdom; and so much are
“ they bewitch’d with the Notion of this Standard
“ of Popery, that they look upon none rightly
“ baptized without being signed with the Sign of
“ the Cross.

“ 3dly, Their *Liturgy* or *Common Prayer* is
“ wholly Popish, and at the best but a bungling
“ Imitation of the *Romish Mass*: From this they
“ have borrowed their Collects, Lessons, &c. and
“ a great Part of what they call their Communion
“ Service. Their Orders of Bishops, Priests and
“ Deacons, both as to the Name and Thing,
“ were taken from *Rome*; and from thence they
“ all pretend to derive their Succession. Their Way
“ of ordaining Ministers resembles that of the Pa-
“ pists; and is equally blasphemous in their Bi-
“ shops pretending to give the Holy Ghost, with
“ the Power of forgiving and retaining Sins, Their
“ *Surplices* are but the Rags of the Whore of *Ba-*
“ *bylon*. Their Organs and Musick in their
“ Churches.

“ Churches, their Singing Boys, their Anthems
 “ and *Te Deums*, are all Popish Inventions.

“ 4thly, Their Church Government by Arch-
 “ bishops and Bishops, their Spiritual Courts, their
 “ Dignities of Deans, Archdeacons, Prebendaries,
 “ &c. are all visibly derived from the Papists; and
 “ like the Papists, their Bishops pretend to give
 “ *Confirmation*: In which they are the less excu-
 “ sable, because in their very Articles of Religion,
 “ *Art. 25.* they declare, that *Confirmation comes of*
 “ *a corrupt following of the Apostles.* The same
 “ Thing they declare with Regard to the Popish
 “ Sacrament of *Penance*, or *priestly Absolution*, and
 “ yet have retain’d it in their *Order for the Visita-*
 “ *tion of the Sick*; where they prescribe *Auricular*
 “ *Confession*, and a Form of *Absolution*, the same in
 “ Substance as that used in the Church of *Rome*.

“ 5thly, Like the Papists they pay an idolatrous
 “ Worship to the Elements of Bread and Wine,
 “ to which they kneel at the Time of Commu-
 “ nion: And their declaring (contrary to the ex-
 “ press Words of their Catechism) that they don’t
 “ believe the Body and Blood of *Christ* to be there,
 “ does but aggravate their Guilt beyond that of
 “ the Papists, because these believe that in the
 “ Sacrament they worship *Christ*, whereas our pre-
 “ tended Protestants believe they have nothing there
 “ but Bread and Wine.

“ 6thly, They observe Days like the Papists in
 “ Honour of the Saints and Angels: Which if it
 “ be not *Religious Worship*, I know not what is.
 “ They pray to be defended by the Angels in their
 “ Collect for *Michaelmas-day*, which is rank Po-
 “ pery. Their Calendar is full of Popish Saints.
 “ They prescribe Fasts and Abstinence like the Pa-
 “ pists; and from them have taken into their
 “ Books the Fasts of *Lent*, *Vigils*, *Ember-days* and
 “ *Fridays*: Tho’, to give them their Due, this Part

“ of

“ of Popery, for a long Time, has been found no
 “ where but in their Books.

“ In fine, their Godfathers and Godmothers in
 “ Baptism, their Churching of Women after Child-
 “ bearing, their whole Order of Matrimony, their
 “ Consecration of Churches, their Anointing of
 “ Kings, and such like Observances, are no bet-
 “ ter than Popery ; and, in a Word, the whole Face
 “ of their Religion, both in Town and Country,
 “ is an exact Resemblance of that of their Popish
 “ Forefathers. And consequently, since Popery and
 “ Paganism stand upon a Level, I cannot but con-
 “ clude, that *English* Protestantism is nearly allied to
 “ Paganism. *For whilst we see these pretended Pro-*
 “ *testants worshipping at this Day in the same Tem-*
 “ *ples, at the same Altars, sometimes before the same*
 “ *Images, and always with the same Liturgy, and*
 “ *many of the same Ceremonies, as the Papists did,*
 “ *they must have more Charity, as well as Skill in dis-*
 “ *tinguishing, than I pretend to, who can absolve them*
 “ *from the same Crime of Superstition and Idolatry with*
 “ *their Popish Ancestors.*” Dr. Middleton, p. 70, 71.

So far the *Nonconformist*, agreeable to the Copy which the Doctor has set him in his Parallel between Popery and Paganism. Now this Kind of Rhetorick, I am persuaded, whatever Effect it might have with Regard to Dissenters, would excite no other Notions in the Minds of Church-Protestants, than those of Indignation or Contempt: And the same would be their Dispositions with Regard to Dr. Middleton's Performance, if they would make Use of the same Weights and Measures in our Case as in their own.

I shall add no more, but that I cannot but apprehend that the Doctor, in pretending to impeach us of Paganism, has impugned the known Truth: A Truth so evident, that, notwithstanding the violent Humour of *Luther*, and all his bitter Declamations

tions against us, yet he could not help acknowledging, in his Book against the *Anabaptists*, "That under the Papacy are many good Christian Things; yea, all that is good in Christianity; and that Protestants had it from thence.—I say, moreover, says he, that under the Papacy is true Christianity, even the very Kernel of Christianity." So far the Father and Apostle of the Reformation, who, whilst he is forced to grant that we have the very Kernel of Christianity, I fear has kept nothing for himself but the Shell. If the Doctor, in Quality of one of his Children, has inherited any Part of this Treasure, I don't envy him the Inheritance, but shall leave him in the quiet Possession of it.

Just Published,

PRACTICAL REFLECTIONS

FOR

EVERY DAY

Throughout the

YEAR.

Sold by T. MEIGHAN, in *Drury-Lane*.

THE



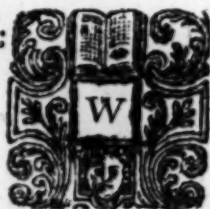
THE
CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN
INSTRUCTED

In the Sacraments, Sacrifice, Ceremonies,
and Observances of the CHURCH.

CHAP. I.

Of the Sign of the Cross.

2.



HY do you treat of the Sign of the *Cross* before you begin to speak of the Sacraments?

A. Because this Holy Sign is made Use of in all the Sacraments, to give us to understand, that they all have their whole Force and Efficacy from the *Cross*, that is, from the Death and Passion of *Jesus Christ*. *What is the Sign of Christ*, says St. *Augustine* *, *which all know*, but the *Cross of Christ*, *which Sign*, if it be not applied to the *Foreheads of the Believers*, to the *Water* with which they are baptized, to the *Chrism* with which they are anointed, to the Sa-

* *Treat. 119. in Joan.*

2 The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.

crifice with which they are fed, none of these Things is duly perform'd.

Q. But did the primitive Christians only make Use of the Sign of the *Cross* in the Administration of the Sacraments?

A. Not only then, but also upon all other Occasions. *At every Step*, says the ancient and learned *Tertullian**, *at every coming in and going out, when we put on our Cloaths or Shoes, when we wash, when we sit down to Table, when we light a Candle, when we go to Bed* — *whatsoever Conversation employs us, we imprint on our Foreheads the Sign of the Cross.*

Q. What is the Meaning of this frequent Use of the Sign of the *Cross*?

A. 'Tis to shew that we are not ashamed of the *Cross of Christ*; 'tis to make an open Profession of our believing in a crucified God; it is to help us to bear always in Mind his Death and Passion; and to nourish thereby in our Souls the three Divine Virtues of *Faith, Hope and Charity.*

Q. How are these three Divine Virtues exercised in the frequent Use of the Sign of the *Cross*?

A. 1st, *Faith* is exercised, because the Sign of the *Cross* brings to our Remembrance the chief Article of the Christian *Belief*, viz. The Son of God dying for us upon the *Cross*. 2^{dly}, Our *Hope* is thereby daily nourish'd and increas'd; because this holy Sign continually reminds us of the Passion of *Christ*, on which is grounded all our *Hope* for Mercy, Grace and Salvation. 3^{dly}, *Charity*, or the Love of God, is excited in us by that sacred Sign; by representing to us the *Love* which God has shew'd us in dying upon the *Cross* for us.

Q. In what Manner do you make the Sign of the *Cross*?

A. In blessing ourselves, we form the Sign of the *Cross* by putting our Right-hand to the Forehead,

* *L. de Corona Milit. c. 3.*

and so drawing, as it were, a Line down to the Breast or Stomach, and then another Line crossing the former from the Left Shoulder to the Right : And the Words that we pronounce at the same Time are these, *In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost* ; by which we make a solemn Profession of our Faith in the Blessed Trinity. But in blessing other Persons or Things we form the *Cross* in the Air with the Right-hand extended towards the Thing we bless.

Q. Have you any Thing more to add in Favour of the *Cross*, and the Use of signing ourselves with the Sign of the *Cross* ?

A. Yes. The *Cross* is the Standard of *Christ*, and is called by our Lord himself, St. *Matt.* xxiv. 30. *The Sign of the Son of Man*. It is the Badge of all good Christians, represented by the Letter *Tau* *, order'd to be set as a Mark upon the Foreheads of those that were to escape the Wrath of God, *Ezekiel* ix. 4. It was given by our Lord to *Constantine*, the first Christian Emperor, as a Token and Assurance of Victory, when he and his whole Army, in their March against the Tyrant *Maxentius*, saw a *Cross* form'd of pure Light, above the Sun, with this Inscription *ϠΕΡΩ ΝΙΚΩ*, *By this conquer* : Which Account the Historian *Eusebius*, in his first Book of the Life of *Constantine*, declares he had from that Emperor's own Mouth. To which we may add, that the Sign of the *Cross* was used of old by the Holy Fathers, as an invincible Buckler against the Devil, and a powerful Means to dissipate his Illusions ; and that God has often made it an Instrument in their Hands of great and illustrious Miracles, of which there are innumerable Instances in ancient Church history, and in the Writings of the Fathers, which it would be too tedious here to recount.

* St. *Hierome* upon *Ezek.* ix.

CHAP. II.

Of the Sacrament of Baptism.

2. WHAT do you mean by a Sacrament?

A. An outward Sign or Ceremony, of *Christ's* Institution, by which Grace is given to the Soul of the worthy Receiver.

2. What are the necessary Conditions for a Thing to be a Sacrament?

A. These three. 1st, It must be a *sacred Sign*, and consequently, as to the outward Performance, it must be *visible* or *sensible*. 2^{dly}, This *sacred Sign* must have annexed unto it a Power of communicating Grace to the Soul. 3^{dly}, This must be by Virtue of the *Ordinance* or *Institution* of *Christ*.

2. How then do you prove that Baptism is a Sacrament, since the Scripture no-where calls it so?

A. Because it has these three Conditions. 1st, It is an outward visible Sign, consisting in the washing with Water, with the Form of Words prescribed by *Christ*. 2^{dly}, It has a Power of communicating Grace to our Souls, in the Way of a new Birth; whence it is called by the Apostles, *Tit. iii. 5. The laver or washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Ghost*. 3^{dly}, We have the Ordinance and Institution of *Christ*, *St. Matt. xxviii. 19. Go teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost*. And *St. John iii. 5. Except a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God*.

2. In what Manner must Baptism be administer'd, so as to be valid?

A. It must be administer'd in true natural Water, with this or the like Form of Words, *I baptize thee in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost*; which Words ought to be pronounced

nounced at the same Time as the Water is applied to the Person that is baptized, and by the same Minister.

Q. What if these Words *I baptize thee*, or any one of the Names of the three Persons, should be left out?

A. In that Case it would be no Baptism.

Q. What if the Baptism should be administer'd in Rose-water, or any of the like artificial Waters?

A. It would be no Baptism.

Q. Ought Baptism to be administred by *dipping*, or by *pouring* of the Water; or by *sprinkling* with the Water?

A. It may be administer'd validly any of these Ways; but the Custom of the Church is to administer this Sacrament either by dipping in the Water, which is used in the *East*; or by pouring of the Water upon the Person baptized, which is more customary in these Parts of *Christendom*. Moreover 'tis the Custom in all Parts of the Catholick Church, and has been so from the Apostles Days, to dip or pour three Times at the Names of the three divine Persons: Tho' we don't look upon this so essential, that the doing otherwise would render the Baptism invalid.

Q. What think you of those that administer Baptism so slightly, that it is doubtful whether it may in any Sense be called an *Ablution* or *Washing*; as for Instance, those that administer it only with a Fillip of a wet Finger?

A. Such as these expose themselves to the Danger of administring no Baptism.

Q. What do you think of Baptism administer'd by Hereticks, or Schismatics?

A. The Church receives their Baptism, if they observe the Catholick *Matter* and *Form*; that is, if they baptize with true natural Water, pronouncing at the same Time these Words, *I baptize*

6 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

thee in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.

Q. What think you of Baptism administer'd with the due Form of Words, but without the Sign of the Cross?

A. The Omission of this Ceremony does not render the Baptism invalid.

Q. What is your Judgment of the Baptism said to be administer'd by some modern *Arians*, *In the Name of the Father, through the Son, in the Holy Ghost?*

A. Such a Corruption of the Form makes the Baptism null and invalid.

Q. What is the Doctrine of the Church as to Baptism administer'd by a Layman or Woman?

A. If it be attempted without Necessity, it is a criminal Presumption; tho' even then the Baptism is valid, and is not to be reiterated: But in a Case of Necessity, when a Priest cannot be had, and a Child is in immediate Danger of Death, Baptism may not only validly, but also lawfully be administer'd by any Person whatsoever. In which Case a Cleric, tho' only in lesser Orders, is to be admitted preferably to a Layman, and a Man preferably to a Woman, and a Catholick preferably to a Heretick.

Q. How do you prove that Infants may be baptized who are not capable of being taught or instructed in the Faith?

A. I prove it, 1st, By a Tradition which the Church has received from the Apostles *, and practised in all Ages ever since; now as none were more likely or better qualified than the Apostles, to understand the true Meaning of the Commission given them by their Master to baptize all Nations, so none were more diligent than they to execute faith-

* St. Irenæus, l. 2. c. 39. Origen, l. 5. in c. 6. ad Rom. St. Cyprian, Ep. ad Fidum. St. Chrysostome, Hom. ad Neophytes. St. Augustine, l. 10. de Gen. c. 23, &c.

fully this Commission according to his Meaning, and to teach their Disciples to do the same, *St. Matt. xxviii. 20.* So that what the Church has received by Tradition from the Apostles and their Disciples was undoubtedly agreeable to the Commission of *Christ.*

Secondly, I prove it by comparing together two Texts of Scripture, one of which declares that without Baptism no one can enter into the Kingdom of Heaven. *St. John iii. 5. Except a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.* The other Text declares that Infants are capable of this Kingdom, *St. Luke xviii. 16. Suffer little children to come unto me, and forbid them not, for of such is the kingdom of God:* and consequently they must be capable of Baptism.

Thirdly, Circumcision in the old Law corresponded to Baptism in the new Law, and was a Figure of it, *Colos. ii. 11, 12.* But Circumcision was administer'd to Infants, *Gen. xvii.* Therefore Baptism in like Manner is to be administer'd to Infants.

Fourthly, We read in Scripture of whole Families baptized by *St. Paul, Acts xvi. 14,* and *33. 1 Cor. i. 16.* Now 'tis probable that in so many whole Families there were some Infants.

Fifthly, As Infants are not capable of helping themselves by Faith and Repentance, were they not capable of being helped by the Sacrament of Baptism, they could have no Share in *Christ*, and no Means to be deliver'd from original Sin; and consequently almost one half of Mankind, dying before the Use of Reason, must inevitably perish, if Infants were not to be baptized.

Sixthly, If Infants Baptism were invalid, the Gates of Hell would have long since prevail'd against the Church; yea, for many Ages there would have been no such Thing as Christians upon Earth; since for many Ages before the Anabaptists arose.

8 The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.

all Persons had been baptized in their Infancy; which Baptism if it were null, they were no Christians, and consequently there was no Church. Where then was that Promise of *Christ*, St. *Matt.* xvi. 19. *Upon this rock I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.* And St. *Matt.* xxviii. 20. *Lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the world.*

Besides, if Infants Baptism be null, the first Preachers of the Anabaptists had never received Baptism, or had received it from those who never had been baptized. A likely Set of Men for bringing back God's Truth banish'd from the World, who had not so much as received the first Badge or Character of a Christian; and who, so far from having any Orders or Mission, had not so much as Baptism.

Q. How do you prove against the *Quakers* that all Persons ought to be baptized?

A. From the Commission of *Christ*, St. *Matt.* xxviii. 19. *Go teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.* From that general Sentence of our Lord, St. *John* iii. 5. *Except a man be born again of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.* From the Practice of the Apostles, and of the first Christians, who were all baptized: Thus we read, *Acts* ii. 38. with Relation to the first Converts to Christianity at *Jerusalem*, when they ask'd of the Apostles what they should do? that *Peter* said unto them, *Repent and be baptized every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ.* And ver. 41. *Then they that gladly received his word were baptized, &c.* Thus we read of the Samaritans converted by *Philip*, *Acts* viii. 12, 13. that *They were baptized both men and women:* and that *Simon (Magus) himself also believed, and was baptized:* As was also the Eunuch of *Queen Candace*, ver. 36, 38. Thu

we

we find *Paul* baptized by *Ananias*, *Acts* ix. 18. *Cornelius* and his Friends by Order of *St. Peter*, *Acts* x. 47, 48. *Lydia* and her Household by *St. Paul*, *Acts* xvi. 15, &c. In fine, from the perpetual Belief and Practice of the whole Church ever since the Apostles Days, which in all Ages and all Nations has ever administer'd Baptism in Water to all her Children, and never looked upon any to be rightly Christians till they were baptized. Now if a person will not hear the church, let him be to thee as a heathen and a publican, *St. Matt.* xviii. 17.

2. How do you prove from Scripture that the Apostles gave Baptism in Water?

A. From *Acts* viii. 36, 38. See here is water, said the Eunuch to *St. Philip*, what does hinder me to be baptized? . . . and they went down both into the water, both *Philip* and the Eunuch, and he baptized him. And *Acts* x. 47, 48. Can any man forbid water, said *St. Peter*, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we? And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Where we see that even they who received the Holy Ghost, and consequently had been baptized by the Spirit, were nevertheless commanded to be baptized in Water. Hence *St. Paul*, *Ephes.* v. 25, 26. tells us, that *Christ* loved the church, and gave himself for it, that he might sanctify it, cleansing it by the laver of WATER, in the word of life. And *Heb.* x. 22. Let us draw near with a true heart — having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure WATER.

2. What are the Effects of the Sacrament of Baptism?

A. 1st, It washes away original Sin, in which we are all born, by Reason of the Sin of our first Father *Adam*. 2^{dly}, It remits all actual Sins, which we ourselves have committed (in Case we have com-

mitted any before Baptism) both as to the *Guilt* and *Pain*. 3dly, It infuses the Habit of Divine Grace into our Souls, and makes us the adopted Children of God. 4thly, It gives us a Right and Title to the Kingdom of Heaven. 5thly, It imprints a *Character* or spiritual Mark in the Soul. 6thly, Infine, it lets us into the Church of God, and makes us Children and Members of the Church.

Q. How do you prove that all Sins are remitted in Baptism?

A. From *Acts* ii. 38. *Repent and be baptized every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ, for the remission of sins. Acts* xxii. 16. *Arise and be baptized,* says *Ananias* to *Paul*, and wash away thy sins [in the Greek, be washed from thy Sins] calling upon the name of the Lord. *Ezekiel* xxxvi. 25. *I will pour clean water upon you, and you shall be cleansed from all your filthiness.* Hence in the *Nicene Creed*, we confess one Baptism unto the Remission of Sins.

Q. May not a Person obtain the Remission of his Sins, and eternal Salvation, without being actually baptized?

A. In two Cases he may. The first is when a Person, not yet baptized, but heartily desiring Baptism, is put to death for the Faith of *Christ*, before he can have this Sacrament administer'd to him; for such a one is *baptized* in his own Blood. The second Case is, when a Person that can by no Means procure the actual Administration of Baptism, has an earnest Desire of it, join'd with a perfect Love of God, and Repentance of his Sins, and dies in this Disposition; for this is called the *Baptism of the Holy Ghost*; *Baptismus Flaminis*.

Q. From whence has Baptism the Power of conferring Grace, and washing away our Sins?

A. From the Institution of *Christ*, and in Virtue of his Blood, Passion and Death: From whence also all the other Sacraments have their Efficacy.

For

For there is no obtaining Mercy, Grace or Salvation, but through the Passion of *Jesus Christ*.

2. In what Manner must a Person, that is come to Years of Discretion, prepare himself for the Sacrament of Baptism?

A. By *Faith* and *Repentance*: And therefore it is necessary that he be first well instructed in the Christian Doctrine, and that he firmly believe all the Articles of the Catholick Faith. 2^{dly}, That he be heartily sorry for all his Sins, firmly resolving to lead a good Christian Life, to renounce all sinful Habits, and to make full Satisfaction to all whom he has any Ways injured.

2. But what if a Person should be baptized without being in these Dispositions?

A. In that Case he would receive the Sacrament and Character of Baptism, but not the Grace of the Sacrament, nor the Remission of his Sins, which he cannot obtain till by a sincere Repentance he detests and renounces all his Sins.

2. Is it necessary for a Person to go to Confession before he receive the Sacrament of Baptism?

A. No, it is not: Because the Sins committed before Baptism are wash'd away by Baptism, and not by the Sacrament of Penance; and therefore there is no Need of confessing them.

2. What think you of those that put off for a long Time their Childrens Baptism?

A. I think they are guilty of a Sin, in exposing them to the Danger of dying without Baptism: Since, as daily Experience ought to convince them, young Children are so quickly and so easily snatch'd away by Death.

C H A P. III.

Of the Ceremonies of Baptism; and of the Manner of administering this Sacrament in the Catholick Church.

Q. **W**HY does the Church make Use of so many Ceremonies in Baptism?

A. 1st, To render thereby this Myſtery more venerable to the People. 2^{dly}, To make them underſtand the Effects of this Sacrament, and what the Obligations are which they contract in this Sacrament.

Q. Are the Ceremonies of Baptism very ancient?

A. They are all of them very ancient, as may be demonſtrated from the Writings of the Holy Fathers; and as we know no Beginning of them, we have Reason to conclude that they come from Apoſtolicall Tradition.

Q. In what Places does the Church adminiſter the Sacrament of Baptiſm?

A. Regularly ſpeaking, and excepting the Caſe of Neceſſity, ſhe does not allow Baptiſm to be adminiſter'd any where elſe but in the Churches which have Fonts: The Water of which, by Apoſtolicall Tradition, is ſolemnly bleſſed every Year on the Vigils of *Eaſter* and *Whitſunday*.

Q. What is the Meaning of having Godfathers and Godmothers in Baptiſm?

A. 1st, That they may preſent to the Church the Perſon that is to be baptized, and may be Witneſſes of his Baptiſm; 2^{dly}, That they may answer in his Name, and be Sureties for his Performance of the Promiſes which they make for him.

Q. What is the Duty of Godfathers and Godmothers?

A. To ſee as much as lies in them, that their Godchildren be brought up in the true Faith, and in the Fear of God; that they be timely inſtructed in

in the whole Christian Doctrine, and that they make good those Engagements which they have made in their Name.

Q. May all Sorts of Persons be admitted for Godfathers and Godmothers?

A. No: But only such as are duly qualified for discharging the Obligations of a Godfather or Godmother. Upon which Account none are to be admitted that are not Members of the Catholick Church; none whose Lives are publickly scandalous, none who are ignorant of the Christian Doctrine, &c. *Rit. Rom.*

Q. How many Godfathers and Godmothers may a Person have in the Catholick Church?

A. The Council of *Trent*, Sess. 24. Chap. 2. orders that no one should have any more than one Godfather and one Godmother; that the Spiritual Kindred, which the Child and its Parents contract with the Godfathers and Godmothers, and which is an Impediment of Marriage, may not be extended to too many Persons.

Q. In what Order or Manner does the Catholick Church proceed in the Administration of Baptism?

A. 1st, The Priest having asked the Name of the Person that is to be baptized, (which ought not to be any profane or heathenish Name, but the Name of some Saint, by whose Example he may be excited to a holy Life, and by whose Prayers he may be protected) inquires of him; N. *What dost thou demand of the Church of God?* To which the Person himself, if at Age, or the Godfather and Godmother for him, answer, *Faith*: By which is meant not the bare Virtue, by which we believe what God teaches, but the whole Body of *Christianity*, as comprehending both Belief and Practice; into which the Faithful enter by the Gate of Baptism. The Priest goes on and asks; *What does Faith give thee?* Answ. *Life Everlasting.*
Priest.

14 The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.

Priest. *If then thou wilt enter into Life keep the Commandments, thou shalt love the Lord thy God with thy whole Heart, and with thy whole Soul, and with thy whole Mind; and thy Neighbour as thyself.*

After this the Priest blows three Times upon the Face of the Person that is to be baptized, saying, *Depart out of him, or her, O unclean Spirit, and give place to the Holy Ghost the Comforter.* This Ceremony was practised by the universal Church, long before St. *Augustine's* Days, who calls it *, a most ancient Tradition; and it is used in Contempt of Satan, and to drive him away by the Holy Ghost, who is called the Spirit or Breath of God.

Then the Priest makes the Sign of the Cross on the Forehead and on the Breast of the Person that is to be baptized, saying, *Receive the Sign of the Cross, upon thy Forehead, and in thy Heart; receive the Faith of the heavenly Commandments, and let thy Manners be such that thou mayest now be the Temple of God.* This Sign of the Cross upon the Forehead is to give us to understand that we are to make open Profession of the Faith of a crucified God, and never to be ashamed of his Cross; and the Sign of the Cross upon the Breast is to teach us, that we are always to have *Christ* crucified in our Hearts.

After this there follow some Prayers for the Person that is to be baptized, to beg of God to dispose his Soul for the Grace of Baptism. Then the Priest blesses some Salt, and puts a Grain of it in the Mouth of the Person that is to be baptized.

By which ancient Ceremony we are admonished to procure and maintain in our Souls true Wisdom and Prudence; of which Salt is an Emblem or Figure, inasmuch as it seasons and gives a Relish to all Things. Upon which Account it was commanded in the Law, *Levit. ii. 13.* that Salt should be used in every Sacrifice or Oblation made to God; to

* *L. de nuptiis, c. 18, and 29.*

whom no Offering can be pleasing where the *Salt of Discretion* is wanting. We are also admonished by this Ceremony so to season our Souls with the Grace of God, as to keep them from the Corruption of Sin, as we make use of Salt to keep Things from corrupting.

Then the Priest proceeds to the solemn Prayers and Exorcisms, used of old by the Catholick Church in the Administration of Baptism, to cast out the Devil from the Soul, under whose Power we are born by original Sin. *I exorcise thee*, says he, *O unclean Spirit, in the Name of the Father ✠, and of the Son ✠, and of the Holy Ghost ✠, that thou mayest go out, and depart from this Servant of God N. For he commands thee, O thou cursed and condemned Wretch, who with his Feet walked upon the Sea, and stretched forth his Right-hand to Peter that was sinking. Therefore, O accursed Devil, remember thy Sentence, and give Honour to the living and true God. Give honour to Jesus Christ his Son, and to the Holy Ghost, and depart from this Servant of God N. For our God and Lord Jesus Christ has vouchsafed to call him to his holy Grace and Blessing, and to the Font of Baptism.* Then he signs the Forehead with the Sign of the Cross, saying, *And this Sign of the holy Cross, which we imprint on his Forehead, mayest thou, O cursed Devil, never dare to violate, thro' the same Christ our Lord.* Amen.

All that has been hitherto set down of the Prayers and Ceremonies of Baptism is usually performed in the Porch or Entry of the Church, to signify that the *Catechumen*, or Person that is to be baptized, is not worthy to enter into the Church 'till the Devil first be cast out of his Soul. But after these Prayers and Exorcisms, the Priest reaches forth the Extremity of his Stole to the Catechumen, or if it be an Infant, lays it upon him, and so introduces him into the Church, saying, *N. come into the Temple of God,*
that

16 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

that thou mayst have part with Christ, unto Everlasting Life, Amen.

Being come into the Church, the Priest, jointly with the Party that is to be baptized, or if it be an Infant, with the Godfather and Godmother, recites aloud the *Apostles Creed* and the *Lord's Prayer*. Then reads another Exorcism over the Catechumen, commanding the Devil to depart in the Name, and by the Power of the most Blessed Trinity. After which, in Imitation of *Christ*, who cured with his Spittle the Man that was Deaf and Dumb, *St. Mark* vii. 32, &c. he wets his Finger with his Spittle, and touches first the Ears of the Catechumen, saying, *Ephphetha*, that is, *be thou open'd*; then his Nostrils, adding these Words, *unto the Odour of Sweetness, But be thou put to flight, O Devil, for the Judgment of God will be at hand*, By which Ceremony the Church instructs her Catechumens to have their Ears open to God's Truth, and to smell its Sweetness; and begs this Grace for them.

Then the Priest asks the Person that is to be baptized, *N. Dost thou renounce Satan?* To which the Person himself, if at Age, otherwise the Godfather and Godmother in his Name, answer; *I renounce him*. The Priest goes on, *And all his Works?* Answ. *I renounce them*. Priest, *And all his Poms?* Answ. *I renounce them*.

This solemn *Renouncing* of Satan, and of his Works, and his Poms, in the receiving of Baptism, is a Practice as ancient as the Church itself, and in a particular Manner requires our Attention: Because it is a *Promise* and *Vow* that we make to God, by which we engage ourselves to abandon the *Party* of the *Devil*, to have nothing to do with his Works, that is, with the *Works* of Darkness and Sin; and to cast away from us his *Poms*, that is, the *Maxims* and *Vanities* of the World. It is a *Covenant* we make with God, by which we on our

Parts

Parts promise him our Allegiance, and to fight against his Enemies: And he on his Part promises us Life everlasting, if we are faithful to our Engagements. But in the Moment we break this solemn *Covenant* by wilful Sin, we lose both the Grace of Baptism, and all that Title to an eternal Inheritance which we received in Baptism, together with the Dignity of Children of God; and become immediately Slaves of the Devil, and Children of Hell.

After this renouncing Satan, and declaring War against him, to give us to understand what kind of Arms we are to procure in this Spiritual Conflict, the Priest anoints the Catechumen upon the Breast, and between the Shoulders, with Holy Oil, which is solemnly blessed by the Bishop every Year on *Maundy-Thursd*ay; which outward Unction is to represent the inward Anointing of the Soul by divine Grace, which like a sacred Oil penetrates our Hearts, heals the Wounds of our Souls, and fortifies them against our Passions and Concupiscences. Where note, that the Anointing of the Breast is to signify the Necessity of fortifying the Heart with heavenly Courage, to act manfully and do our Duty in all Things; and the Anointing between the Shoulders is to signify the Necessity of the like Grace, to bear and support all the Adversities and Crosses of this mortal Life. The Words which the Priest uses at this Conjunction are, *I anoint thee with the Oil of Salvation in Christ Jesus our Lord, that thou mayest have eternal Life, Amen.*

Then the Priest asks the Catechumen, N: *Dost thou believe in God the Father Almighty, Creator of Heaven and Earth?* Answ. *I believe.* Priest. *Dost thou believe in Jesus Christ, his only Son our Lord, who was born, and who suffered for us?* Answ. *I believe.* Priest. *Dost thou believe in the Holy Ghost, the Holy Catholick Church, the Communion of Saints, the For-*
giveness

giveness of Sins, the Resurrection of the Body, and Life everlasting? Answ. *I believe.* Which Answers are made, either by the Catechumen himself, if able; or by the Godfather and Godmother; and imply another Part of the *Covenant of Baptism, viz. the Covenant of Faith*; by which we oblige ourselves to a steady and sincere Profession of the great Truths of Christianity, and that not by Words alone, but by the constant Practice of our Lives.

After this the Priest asks; N. *Wilt thou be baptized?* Answ. *I will.* Then the Godfather and Godmother both holding or touching their God-child, the Priest pours the Water upon his Head three Times in the Form of a Cross, or where the Custom is to dip, dips him three Times, saying at the same Time these Words; N. *I baptize thee in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.* Which Words are pronounced in such Manner, that the three Pourings of the Water concur with the Pronouncing of the three Names of the divine Persons. For the Form is to be pronounced but once.

But if there be a Doubt whether the Person has been baptized before or no; then the Priest makes Use of this Form. N. *If thou art not already baptized, I baptize thee in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.*

Then the Priest anoints the Person baptized on the Top of the Head in Form of a Cross with holy *Chrism*, which is a Compound of Oil and Balm, solemnly consecrated by the Bishop. Which Ceremony comes from Apostolical Tradition, and gives us to understand, 1st, That in Baptism we are made Partakers with *Christ*, (whose Name signifies *Anointed*) and have a Share in his *Unction* and Grace. 2^{dly}, That we partake also in some Manner in his Dignity of King and Priest, as all Christians are called by St. Peter, 1 Pet. ii. 9. *A royal or*
kingly

kingly priesthood, and therefore we are anointed in this Quality as Kings and Priests are anointed. 3dly, That we are consecrated to God by Baptism, and therefore are anointed with holy *Chrism*, which the Church is accustomed to make Use of in anointing all those Things which she solemnly consecrates to the Service of God.

The Prayer which the Priest recites on this Occasion is as follows. *May the Almighty God, the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has regenerated thee of Water and the Holy Ghost, and who has given thee the Remission of all thy Sins, anoint thee with the Chrism of Salvation in the same Christ Jesus our Lord, unto Life everlasting. Amen.* Then the Priest says, *Peace be to thee.* Ans. *And with thy Spirit.*

After which the Priest puts upon the Head of the Person that has been baptized, a white Linnen Cloth, commonly called the *Chrysom*, in Place of the white Garment with which the new Christians used formerly to be cloathed in Baptism, to signify the Purity and Innocence which we receive in Baptism, and which we must take Care to preserve till Death. In putting on this white Linnen the Priest says, *Receive this white Garment, which thou mayest carry unstained, before the Judgment-seat of our Lord Jesus Christ, that thou mayest have eternal Life. Amen.*

Then he puts a lighted Candle into the Hand of the Person baptized, or of the Godfather, saying, *Receive this burning Light, and keep thy Baptism without Reproof; observe the Commandments of God, that when our Lord shall come to his Nuptials, thou mayest meet him together with all the Saints, in the heavenly Court, and mayest have Life eternal, and mayest live for ever and ever. Amen.* Which Ceremony alludes to the Parable of the ten Virgins, St. Matt. xxv. who took their lamps and went forth to meet the bridegroom; and admonishes us to keep the Light of

of Faith ever burning by the Oil of good Works ; that whensoever our Lord shall come, we may be found with our Lamps burning, and may go in with him into the eternal Life of his heavenly Kingdom.

Lastly, The Priest addressing himself to the Person baptized, says, *N. Go in Peace, and the Lord be with thee.* Amen. Then he admonishes as well the Parents, as the Godfather and Godmother, of their respective Duty, with Regard to the Education and Instruction of their Child ; and of the Care which the Church requires of the Parents, not to let the Child lie in the same Bed with them, or with the Nurse, for fear of its being overlaid. And lastly he informs them of the spiritual Kindred which is contracted between the Gossips and the Child, as also between the Gossips and the Parents of the Child ; which makes it unlawful for them afterwards to marry with those to whom they are thus spiritually allied.

C H A P. IV.

Of the Sacrament of Confirmation, and of the Manner of administering it.

Q. **WHAT** do you mean by *Confirmation*?

A. A Sacrament by which the Faithful after Baptism receive the Holy Ghost by the Imposition of the Hands of the Bishop and Prayer, accompanied with the Uncction or Anointing of their Foreheads with holy *Chrism*.

Q. Why do you call it *Confirmation*?

A. From its Effect, which is to *confirm* or strengthen those that receive it, in the Profession of the true Faith, to make them Soldiers of *Christ*, and perfect Christians, and to arm them against their spiritual Enemies.

Q. How

Q. How do you prove from Scripture, that the Apostles practised Confirmation?

A. I prove it from *Acts* viii. 14, 15, 16, 17, 18. where we read of St. Peter and St. John confirming the Samaritans. They prayed for them that they might receive the Holy Ghost, then laid they their Hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost, &c. Item, *Acts* xix. 5, 6. They were baptized in the Name of the Lord Jesus. And when Paul had laid his hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them. It is of Confirmation also that St. Paul speaks, *Heb.* vi. 1, 2. Not laying again the foundation, &c. of the doctrine of baptism, and of laying on of hands, &c. And 2 *Cor.* i. 21, 22. Now he which confirmeth us with you in Christ, and hath anointed us, is God: who hath also sealed us, and given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts.

Q. How do you prove that Confirmation is a Sacrament?

A. 1st, Because it is plain from *Acts* viii. that the visible Sign of the Imposition of Hands has annexed to it an invisible Grace, viz. the imparting of the Holy Ghost: Consequently Confirmation is a visible Sign of invisible Grace, and therefore is a Sacrament. 2^{dly}, Because the Church of God, from the Apostles Days, has always believed it to be a Sacrament, and administer'd it as such. See St. Dionysius, *L. de Eccles. Hierarch.* c. 4. Tertullian, *L. de Baptismo*, c. 7. *L. de Resurrectione carnis*, c. 8. *L. Præscrip. adversus Hæreses*, c. 4. St. Cornelius, *Epist. ad Fabium Antioch.* apud Eusebium, *L. 6. Histor.* c. 43. St. Cyprian, *Epist.* 70. *ad Januarium*, *Epist.* 72. *ad Stephanum Papam*, *Epist.* 73. *ad Jubaianum*, *Epist.* 74. *ad Pompeium*. Firmilian. *Epist. ad St. Cyprianum*. The Council of Illiberis, Can. 38. The Council of Laodicea, Can. 48. St. Cyril of Jerusalem, *Catech.* 3. *Mystag.* St. Pacian, *Epist.* 1, & 3, *ad Sympron.* & in *Sermone de Baptismo*. St. Ambrose, *L.*

22 The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.

L. de iis qui mysteriis initiantur, c. 7. The Author of the Books of the Sacraments attributed to St. Ambrose, L. 3. c. 2. St. Optat of Milevis, L. 7. contra Parmenianum. St. Hierome in Dialogo contra Luciferianos. St. Innocentius, Epist. 9. ad Decentium. St. Augustine, Tract. 6. in Epist. 1. Joannis L. 2. contra Literas Petiliani, c. 104, &c. St Cyril of Alexandria, ad Joelis 2. v. 24. St. Leo Pope, Serm. 4. de nativ. Theodoret in comment. ad Cantic. 1. v. 3. St. Gregory the Great, Homil. 17. in Evangelia, &c.

Q. Who is the Minister of this Sacrament?

A. The ordinary Minister of this Sacrament is a Bishop only.

Q. Can this Sacrament be received any more than once?

A. No. Because like Baptism it imprints a Character or spiritual Mark in the Soul, which always remains. Hence those that are to be confirmed are obliged to be so much the more careful to come to this Sacrament worthily, because it can be received but once; and if they then receive it unworthily, they have no Share in the Grace which is thereby communicated to the Soul; instead of which they incur the Guilt of a grievous Sacrilege.

Q. In what Dispositions is a Person to be, in order to approach worthily to the Sacrament of Confirmation?

A. He must be free from mortal Sin, and in the State of Grace; for the Holy Ghost will never come into a Soul which Satan possesses by mortal Sin.

Q. In what Manner then must a Person prepare himself for the Sacrament of Confirmation?

A. 1st, He must examine his Conscience, and if he finds it charged with wilful Sin, he must take Care to purge it by a good Confession. 2^{dy}, He must frequently and fervently call upon God, to dispose his Soul for receiving the Holy Ghost.

Q. What

Q. What Kind of Grace does this Sacrament communicate to the Soul?

A. It communicates to the Soul the Fountain of all Grace the Holy Ghost, with all his Gifts; but more in particular a *fortifying* Grace, to strengthen the Soul against all visible and invisible Enemies of the Faith.

Q. Is then this Sacrament absolutely necessary to Salvation?

A. It is not so necessary, but that a Person may be saved without it: Yet it would be a Sin to neglect it, when a Person might conveniently have it; and a Crime to contemn or despise it.

Q. What Kind of Persons stand most in Need of the Grace of this Sacrament?

A. Those that are most exposed to Persecutions upon Account of their Religion, or to Temptations against Faith.

Q. At what Age may a Person be confirmed?

A. Ordinarily speaking, the Church does not give Confirmation till a Person is come to the Use of Reason, tho' sometimes she confirms Infants; in which Case great Care must be taken, that they be put in Mind, when they come to the Use of Reason, that they have received this Sacrament.

Q. What is the Obligation that a Christian takes upon him in Confirmation?

A. He lists himself there for a Soldier of *Christ*; and consequently is obliged, after having received this Sacrament, to fight manfully the Battles of his Lord.

Q. May a Person have a Godfather or Godmother in Confirmation?

A. He may, by Way of an Instructor and Encourager in the spiritual Warfare; and this Godfather or Godmother contracts the like Obligations as in the the Sacrament of Baptism, and the same spiritual Kindred.

Q. May

24 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

Q. May a Person that is confirmed take a new Name?

A. It is usual so to do, not by way of changing one's Name of Baptism, but by way of adding to it another Name of some Saint, to whom one has a particular Devotion, and by whose Prayers he hopes to acquit himself more faithfully of the Obligations of a Soldier of *Christ*.

Q. Is a Person obliged to receive this Sacrament fasting?

A. No, he is not, tho' it is adviseable so to receive it.

Q. In what Manner is the Sacrament of Confirmation administer'd?

A. First: The Bishop turning towards those that are to be confirmed, with his Hands joined before his Breast, says, *May the H. Ghost come down upon you, and the Power of the most High keep you from all Sins.* Answ. *Amen.*

Then signing himself with the Sign of the Cross, he says, *Our Help is in the Name of the Lord.*

Answ. *Who made Heaven and Earth, &c.*

Then extending his Hands towards those that are to be confirmed (which is what the Ancients call the *Imposition of Hands*) he prays that they may receive the Holy Ghost.

Bishop. *Let us pray.*

O Almighty everlasting God, who hast vouchsafed to regenerate these thy Servants by Water and the Holy Ghost; and who hast given them the Remission of all their Sins; send forth upon them thy sevenfold Holy Spirit, the Comforter from Heaven. Answ. *Amen.*

Bish. *The Spirit of Wisdom and of Understanding.* Answ. *Amen.*

Bish. *The Spirit of Counsel and of Fortitude.* Answ. *Amen.*

Bish. *The Spirit of Knowledge and of Piety.* Answ. *Amen.*

Bish.

Bish. Replenish them with the Spirit of thy Fear, and sign them with the Sign of the ✕ Cross of Christ, in thy Mercy, unto Life everlasting. Through the same Jesus Christ thy Son our Lord, who liveth and reigneth with thee in the Unity of the same Holy Spirit, one God for ever and ever. Amen.

Then the Bishop makes the Sign of the Cross with holy Chrism, upon the Forehead of each one of those that are to be confirmed, saying, *N. I sign thee with the Sign of the Cross, I confirm thee with the Chrism of Salvation, in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.*

After which he gives the Person confirmed a little Blow on the Check, saying, *Pax tecum*, that is, *Peace be with thee.*

Then the Bishop standing with his Face towards the Altar, prays for those that have been confirm'd, that the Holy Ghost may ever dwell in their Hearts, and make them the Temple of his Glory. And then dismisses them with this Blessing; *Behold thus shall every Man be blessed who feareth the Lord. May the Lord bless you from Sion, that you may see the good Things of Jerusalem all the Days of of your Life; and may have Life everlasting. Amen.*

2. I would willingly be instructed in the Meaning of these Ceremonies: Therefore pray tell me first why the Church makes use of *Chrism* in Confirmation, and what this *Chrism* is?

A. Chrism is a Compound of Oil of Olives and Balm of Gilead; solemnly consecrated by the Bishop on Maundy Thursday: And the Unction, or outward Anointing of the Forehead with *Chrism*, is to represent the inward Anointing of the Soul in this Sacrament with the Holy Ghost. The Oil, whose Properties are to fortify the Limbs, and to give a certain Vigour to the Body, to assuage our Pains, &c. represent the like spiritual Effects of the Grace of this Sacrament in the Soul. And the Balm, which

is of a sweet Smell, represents the good Odour or sweet Savour of Christian Virtues, and an innocent Life, with which we are to edify our Neighbours after having received this Sacrament.

Q. Why is this Unction made on the Forehead, and in Form of the Cross?

A. To give us to understand that the Effect of this Sacrament is to arm us against worldly Fear and Shame: And therefore we receive the Standard of the Cross of *Christ* upon our Foreheads, to teach us to make an open Profession of his Doctrine and Maxims; and not to flinch from this Profession, for fear of any Thing that the World can either say or do.

Q. What is the Meaning of the Bishop's giving a little Blow on the Cheek to the Person that is confirm'd?

A. It is to imprint in his Mind, that from this Time forward he is to be ready, like a true Soldier of *Jesus Christ*, to suffer patiently all Kinds of Affronts and Injuries for his Faith.

Q. And why does the Bishop, at the same Time as he gives the Blow, say *Peace be with thee*?

A. To signify that the true *Peace* of God, which, as *St. Paul* says, * *exceeds all Understanding*, is chiefly to be found in patient Suffering for God and his Truths.

C H A P. V.

Of the Sacrament of the Eucharist.

Q. **W**HAT do you mean by the Sacrament of the *Eucharist*?

A. The Sacrament, which our Lord *Jesus Christ* instituted at his last Supper, in which he gives us

* *Philip. iv. 7.*

his Body and Blood under the Forms or Appearances of Bread and Wine.

Q. Why do you call this Sacrament the *Eucharist*?

A. Because the primitive Church and the Holy * Fathers have usually call'd it so: For the Word *Eucharist* in the Greek signifies *Thanksgiving*, and is applied to this Sacrament, because of the *Thanksgiving* which our Lord offer'd in the first Institution of it, St. *Matt.* xxvi. 27. St. *Mark* xiv. 23. St. *Luke* xxii. 19. 1 *Cor.* xi. 24. And because of the *Thanksgiving* with which we are obliged to offer and receive this great Sacrament and Sacrifice, which contains the Abridgement of all God's Wonders, the Fountain of all Grace, the standing Memorial of our Redemption, and the Pledge of a happy Eternity. This Blessed Sacrament is also call'd the *Holy Communion*, because it unites the Faithful with one another, and with their Head *Christ Jesus*, 1 *Cor.* x. 16, 17. And it is call'd the *Supper of our Lord*, because it was first instituted by *Christ* at his *last Supper*.

Q. What is the Faith of the Catholick Church concerning this Sacrament?

A. That the Bread and Wine are changed by the Consecration into the real Body and Blood of *Christ*.

Q. Is it then the Belief of the Church that *Jesus Christ* himself, true God and Man, is truly, really and substantially present in the Blessed Sacrament?

A. It is, for where the *Body* and *Blood* of *Christ* are, there his *Soul* also and his *Divinity* must needs be: And consequently there must be whole *Christ* God and Man: There is no taking him in Pieces.

* St. *Justin* in *Apolog.* 2. St. *Irenæus*, l. 4. c. 34. *Tertullian* L. de *Cor. militis*, c. 3. St. *Cyprian* *Epist.* 54. 1st Council of *Nice*. Can. 18.

Q. Is that which we receive in this Sacrament the same Body as that which was born of the Blessed Virgin, and which suffer'd for us upon the Cross?

A. 'Tis the same Body: For *Christ* never had but one Body: The only Difference is, that then his Body was *mortal* and *passible*; 'tis now *immortal* and *impassible*.

Q. Then the Body of *Christ* in the Sacrament cannot be hurt or divided, neither is it capable of being digested or corrupted?

A. No certainly, for tho' the Sacramental Species, or the outward Forms of Bread and Wine, are liable to these Changes, the Body of *Christ* is not.

Q. Is it then a *Spiritual Body*?

A. It may be call'd a *Spiritual Body*, in the same Sense as *St. Paul*, 1 *Cor.* xv. 44. speaking of the Resurrection of the Body, says, *it is sown a natural Body, it is raised a SPIRITUAL BODY*; not but that it still remains a true Body, as to all that is essential to a Body; but that it partakes in some Measure of the Qualities and Properties of a Spirit.

S E C T. I.

The first Proof of the real Presence, from the Words of Christ at the first Institution of this Blessed Sacrament.

Q. **H**OW do you prove the real Presence of the Body and Blood of *Christ* in this Sacrament?

A. I prove it first from the *express* and *plain* Words of *Christ* himself, the eternal Truth, delivered at the Time of the first Institution of this Blessed Sacrament, and recorded in no less than four different Places in the *New Testament*, viz.
St.

St. *Matt.* xxvi. 26, 27. St. *Mark* xiv. 22, 24. St. *Luke* xxii. 19. 1 *Cor.* xi. 24, 25. In all these Places *Christ* himself assures us, that what he gives us in the Blessed Sacrament is his own Body and Blood. St. *Matt.* xxvi. Take, eat; this is my BODY, This is my blood of the New Testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins. St. *Mark* xiv. Take, eat; this is my body—This is my blood of the New Testament, which is shed for many. St. *Luke* xxii. This is my body, which is given for you—This Cup is the New Testament in my blood which is shed for you. 1 *Cor.* xi. This is my body which is broken (*κλάμενον* sacrificed) for you—This cup is the New Testament in my blood. Now the Body which was given and sacrificed for us, the Blood of the New Testament which was shed for us, is without all Doubt the real Body and Blood of *Christ*. Therefore what *Christ* gives us in this Blessed Sacrament is his real Body and Blood: Nothing can be more plain.

2. Why do you take these Words of *Christ* at his last Supper according to the Letter, rather than in the figurative Sense?

A. You might as well ask a Traveller why he chuses the High-road, rather than to go by By-paths, with evident Danger of losing his Way. We take the Words of *Christ* according to their plain, obvious and natural Meaning, agreeably to that general Rule acknowledg'd by our Adversaries*, that in interpreting Scripture the literal Sense of the Words is not to be forsaken, and a figurative one follow'd without Necessity; and that the natural and proper Sense is always to be preferred, where the Case will admit it. 'Tis not therefore incumbent upon us to give a Reason why we take these Words of *Christ* according to their natural and pro-

* Dr. Harris's Sermon on Transubstantiation, p. 7, 8.

per Sense ; but it is our Adversaries Business to shew a Necessity of taking them otherwise. The Words themselves plainly speak for us ; for *Christ* did not say *this is a Figure of my Body*, and *this is a Figure of my Blood* ; but he said *this is my Body*, and *this is my Blood*. It is their Duty, as they tender the Salvation of their Souls, to beware of offering Violence to Texts so plain, and of wresting them from their evident Meaning.

However, we have many Reasons to offer why we take the Words of *Christ* (which he spoke at his last Supper in the Institution of the Blessed Sacrament) in their most plain, natural and obvious Meaning. *First*, Because he was then all alone with his twelve Apostles, his bosom Friends and Confidants, to whom he was always accustomed to explain in clear Terms, whatever was obscure in his Parables or other Discourses to the People. St. *Mark* iv. 11. *To you*, says he to his Disciples, *it is given to know the mystery [the Secrets] of the kingdom of God, but unto them that are without all things are done in parables.* And ver. 34. *Without a parable spoke he not unto them [the People ;] but when they were alone he expounded all things to his disciples.* St. *John* xv. 15. *Henceforth I call you not servants ; for the servant knoweth not what his Lord doth : but I have called you friends, for all things that I have heard of my Father, I have made known unto you.* How then is it likely, that in this most important Occasion of all, when, the very Night before his Death, he was taking his last Leave and Farewell of these his dear Friends, he should deliver himself to them in Terms which (if they are not to be taken according to the Letter) are obscure beyond all Example, and not any where to be parallel'd ?

Secondly, He was at that Time making a Covenant, which was to last as long as Time itself should last : He was enacting a Law which was to be for ever

ever observed in his Church : He was instituting a *Sacrament*, which was to be frequented by all the Faithful until he should come : He was, in fine, making his *Last Will and Testament*, and therein bequeathing to his Disciples, and to us all, an admirable *Legacy* and *Pledge* of his Love. Now such is the Nature of all these Things, viz. of a *Covenant*, of a *Law*, of a *Sacrament*, of a *Last Will and Testament*, that as he that makes a *Covenant*, a *Law*, &c. always designs that what he covenants, appoints or ordains, should be rightly observed and fulfilled ; so of Consequence he always designs that it should be rightly understood ; and therefore always expresses himself in plain and clear Terms in his *Covenants*, *Laws*, &c. This is what all wise Men ever observe in their *Covenants*, *Laws*, and *Last Wills*, industriously avoiding all obscure Expressions which may give Occasion to their being misunderstood, or to Contentions and Law-suits about their Meaning. This is what God himself observ'd in the *Old Covenant*, in all the ceremonial and moral Precepts of the *Law*, in all the Commandments, in the Institution of all the legal Sacraments, &c. All are expressed in most clear and plain Terms. It can then be nothing less than impeaching the Wisdom of the Son of God, to imagine that he should make his new *Law* and everlasting *Covenant* in figurative and obscure Terms, which he knew would be misunderstood by the greatest Part of *Christendom* ; or to suppose that he should institute the chief of all his *Sacraments* under such a Form of Words, which, in their plain, natural and obvious Meaning, imply a Thing so widely different from what he gives us therein, as his own Body is from a Bit of Bread ; or, in fine, to believe that he would make his *Last Will and Testament* in Words affectedly ambiguous and obscure ; which, if taken according to that Sense which they seem evidently to express, must lead his Children

into a pernicious Error concerning the Legacy that he bequeaths them.

In Effect, our Lord certainly foresaw that his Words would be taken according to the Letter by the Bulk of all *Christendom*; that innumerable of the most learned and most holy would understand them so; that the Church, even in her general Councils, would interpret his Words in this Sense. It must be then contrary to all Probability, that he, who foresaw all this would affect to express himself in this Manner, in his last Will and Testament, had he not meant what he said; or that he should not have somewhere explain'd himself in a more clear Way, to prevent the dreadful Consequence of his whole Church's authorizing an Error in a Matter of so great Importance.

Q. Have you any other Reason to offer for taking the Words of the Institution according to the Letter, rather than in a figurative Sense?

A. Yes, we have for so doing, as I have just now hinted, the Authority of the best and most authentick Interpreter of God's Word, *viz.* his Holy Church; which has always understood these Words of *Christ* in their plain literal Sense, and condemn'd all those that have presumed to wrest them to a Figure. Witness the many Synods held against *Berengarius*; and the Decrees of the general Councils of *Lateran*, *Constance* and *Trent*. Now against this Authority Hell's-Gates shall never prevail, *St. Matt.* xvi. 18. And with this Interpreter *Christ* has promised that both he, himself, and the Holy Ghost, the Spirit of Truth, should abide for ever, *St. Matt.* xviii. 20. and *St. John* xiv. 16, 17.

Q. But are not many of *Christ's* Sayings to be understood figuratively, as when he says that he is *a Door*, *a Vine*, &c? And why then may not also the Words of the Institution of the Blessed Sacrament be understood figuratively?

A. 'Tis

A. 'Tis a very bad Argument to pretend to infer, that because some of *Christ's* Words are to be taken figuratively, therefore all are to be taken so: That because in his *Parables* or *Similitudes* his Words are not to be taken according to the Letter, therefore we are to wrest to a figurative Sense the Words of the Institution of his solemn *Covenant*, *Law*, *Sacrament* and *Testament*, at his last Supper: That because he has called himself a *Door*, or a *Vine*, in Circumstances in which he neither was, nor ever could be misunderstood by any one, (he having taken so much Care in the same Places to explain his own Meaning) therefore he would call Bread and Wine his Body and Blood in Circumstances in which it was natural to understand his Words according to the Letter, as he foresaw all *Christendom* would understand them, and yet has taken no Care to prevent this Interpretation of them.

There is therefore a manifold Disparity between the Case of the Expressions you mention, viz. I am the *Door*, the *Vine*, &c. and the Words of the last Supper, *This is my Body*, *This is my Blood*. 1st, Because the former are delivered as *Parables* and *Similitudes*, and consequently as *Figures*; the latter are the Words of a *Covenant*, *Sacrament* and *Testament*, and therefore are to be understood according to their most plain and obvious Meaning. 2^{dly}, Because the former are explained by *Christ* himself in the same Places in a figurative Sense; the latter are not. 3^{dly}, Because the former are worded in such a Manner as to carry with them the Evidence of a Figure, so that no Man alive can possibly misunderstand them, or take them in any other than a figurative Meaning; the latter are so express'd, and so evidently imply the literal Sense, that they that have been the most desirous to find a Figure in them

34 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

have been puzzled to do it*: And all *Christendom* has for many Ages judged without the least Scruple, that they ought to be taken according to the Letter. 4thly, Because the Church of God has authoriz'd the literal Interpretation of the Words of the Institution of the blessed Sacrament; not so of those other Expressions. In fine, Because, according to the common Laws and Customs of Speech, a Thing may indeed, by an elegant Figure, be called by the Name of that Thing of which it has the Qualities or Properties; and thus *Christ*, by having in himself the Property of a *Door*, inasmuch as it is by him that we must enter into his Sheepfold, St. *John* x. 9. and the Property of the *Vine*, in giving Life and Fruit to its Branches, St. *John* xv. 1. might, according to the usual Laws of Speech, elegantly call himself a *Door* and a *Vine*; but it would be no elegant Metaphor to call Bread and Wine, without making any Change in them, his Body and Blood; because Bread and Wine have in themselves neither any Similitude, nor Quality nor Property of *Christ's* Body and Blood; as it would be absurd, for the same Reason, to point at any particular *Door* or *Vine*, and say, this is *Jesus Christ*.

2. But may not the *Sign* or *Figure*, according to the common Laws of Speech, be called by the Name of the Thing signified? And have we not Instances of this Nature in Scripture; as when *Joseph* interpreting the Dream of *Pharaoh*, Gen. xli. 26. says, *The seven good kine are seven years*; and our Lord interpreting the Parable of the Sower, St. *Luke* viii. 11. says, *The seed is the word of God*; and St. *Paul*, 1 *Cor.* x. 4. says, *The rock was Christ*?

* It was the Case of *Luther* himself, as we learn from his Epistle to his Friends at *Strasburg*, tom. 5. fol. 502. And of *Zuinglius*, as we learn from his Epistle to *Pomeranus*, fol. 256.

A. In certain Cases, when a Thing is already known to be a *Sign* and *Figure* of something else, which it signifies or represents, it may indeed, according to the common Laws of Speech and the Use of the Scripture, be said to *be* such or such a Thing; as in the *Interpretation* of Dreams, Parables, ancient Figures, and upon such like Occasions; where when a Thing is said to *be* this or that, the Meaning is evident; viz. that it *signifies* or *represents* this or that. But 'tis not the same in the *first Institution* of a *Sign* or *Figure*; because when a Thing is not known beforehand to be a *Sign* or Representation of some other Thing, to call it abruptly by a foreign Name would be contrary to all Laws of Speech, and both absurd and unintelligible. As for Instance, if a Person by an Art of Memory had appointed within himself that an *Oak-tree* should be a *Sign* or Memorandum of *Alexander the Great*, and pointing to the Tree should gravely tell his Friends (who were not acquainted with his Design) *This is that Hero that overcame Darius*; such a Proposition as this would justly be censur'd as nonsensical and unworthy of a wise Man; because such a Figure of Speech would be contrary to all Laws of Speech, and unintelligible. Just so would it have been, if our Saviour at his last Supper, without giving his Disciples any Warning beforehand of his Meaning to speak figuratively, and without their considering beforehand the Bread and Wine as Signs and Representations of any Thing else, should have abruptly told them, *This is my Body, This is my Blood*, had he not meant that they were so indeed. For abstracting from the Change which *Christ* was pleased to make in the Elements by his almighty Word, a Bit of Bread has no more Similitude to the Body of *Christ*, than an Oak-tree has to *Alexander the Great*. So that nothing but the real Presence of *Christ's* Body and Blood could verify his Words at his last Supper, or vindicate them from

from being highly absurd and unworthy the Son of God.

Q. But do not those Words which our Lord spoke, *St. Luke xxii. 19. Do this in remembrance of me,* sufficiently clear up the Difficulty, and determine his other Words to a figurative Sense?

A. These Words, *Do this in remembrance of me,* inform us indeed of the *End* for which we are to offer up, and to receive the Body and Blood of *Christ*, viz. for a perpetual Commemoration of his Death, *1 Cor. xi. 26.* but they no Way interfere with those other Words, *This is my Body*, and *This is my Blood*, so as to explain away the real Presence of *Christ's* Body and Blood. For why should *Christ's* Body and Blood be less present in the Sacrament, because we are commanded in the receiving of them to remember his Death? Certainly *St. Matthew* and *St. Mark*, who in their Gospels have quite omitted those Words, *Do this in remembrance of me*, never looked upon them as a necessary Explication of the Words of the Institution, or as any Ways altering or qualifying the natural and obvious Meaning of these Words, *This is my Body*, *This is my Blood*.

Q. But does not the *Remembrance* of a Thing suppose it to be *absent*: For otherwise why should we be commanded to *remember* it?

A. Whatsoever Things we may be liable to forget, whether really present, or really absent, may be the Object of our *Remembrance*; and thus we are commanded in Scripture to *Remember God*, *Deut. viii. 18. Eccles. xii. 1.* tho' *In him we live, move, and have our being*, *Acts xvii. 28.* So that this Command of *Remembering Christ* is no Ways opposite to his real Presence: But the most that can be inferred from it is, that he is not *visibly* present; which is very true; and therefore, lest we should forget him, this *Remembrance* is enjoined. Besides,

if

if we hearken to the Apostle, 1 Cor. xi. 26. he will inform us that what we are commanded to remember is the Death of *Christ*; now, the Death of *Christ* is not a Thing really present, but really past, and therefore a most proper Subject for our *Remembrance*.

S E C T. II.

The second Proof of the real Presence, from St. John vi. 51, &c.

2. **W**HAT other Proof have you for the real Presence of *Christ's* Body and Blood in the Sacrament of the Eucharist, besides the Words of the Institution, *This is my Body*, and *This is my Blood*?

A. We have a very strong Proof in the Words of *Christ* spoken to the *Jews*, in the sixth Chapter of *St. John*, where, upon Occasion of the Miracle of feeding the Multitude with five Loaves, having spoken of the Necessity of believing in him who is the Living Bread, that came down from Heaven, he passes from this Discourse concerning Faith, to speak of this Sacrament. *Ver. 51, &c. I am the living bread that came down from heaven: If any man eat of this bread he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my Flesh, which I will give for the life of the world. The Jews therefore strove amongst themselves, saying, How can this man give us his flesh to eat? Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, you have no life in you. Who so eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day, For my flesh is meat indeed, and my Blood is drink indeed. He that eateth my flesh and drinketh my blood dwelleth in me, and I in him. As the living Father hath sent me,*
and

38 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

and I live by the Father: So he that eateth me, even he shall live by me. This is that bread which came down from heaven, not as your fathers did eat manna, and are dead: He that eateth of this bread shall live for ever. In which Words the eating of Christ's Flesh, and the drinking his Blood, is so strongly, so clearly and so frequently inculcated; and we are so plain told that the Bread which Christ was to give is that very Flesh which he gave for the Life of the World, that one must be resolved to keep one's Eyes shut against the Light, if one will not see so plain a Truth.

2. How do you prove that Christ in this Place is speaking of the blessed Sacrament?

A. By comparing the Words which he spoke upon this Occasion with those which he delivered at his last Supper in the Institution of the blessed Sacrament: In the one Place he says, *The bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world*; in the other, taking Bread and distributing it, he says, *This is my body which is given for you*. Where it is visible that the one is a Promise which the other fulfills; and consequently, that both the one and the other have relation to the same Sacrament. Hence we find that the Current of the holy Fathers has always explained those Words of the sixth Chapter of St. John, as spoken of the Sacrament. See St. Irenæus L. 4. c. 34. Origen Hom. 16. upon Numbers. St. Cyprian upon the Lord's Prayer. St. Hilary in his 8th Book of the Trinity. St. Basil in his moral Rules, Reg. 1. c. 1. St. Cyril of Jerusalem, Catech. Mystag. 4. St. Ambrose of the Mysteries c. 8: St. John Chrysostom, St. Augustine, and St. Cyril of Alexandria writing upon the sixth Chapter of St. John. St. Epiphanius Hæresi 55. Theodoret L. 4. Hist. Eccles. c. 11. &c.

2. But

Q. But does not *Christ* promise *eternal Life*, St. *John* vi. 51, 54, and 58, to every one that eateth of that *Bread* of which he is there speaking; which Promise cannot be understood with relation to the *Sacrament*, which many receive to their own Damnation, 1 *Cor.* xi. 29?

A. He promises *eternal Life* to every one that eateth of that *Bread*; but this is to be understood, provided that he eat it *worthily*, and that he persevere in the *Grace* which he thereby receives. And in this Sense 'tis certain that this *Sacrament* gives *eternal Life*: Whereas the *Manna* of old had no such Power, ver. 54. In like Manner our Lord promises, St. *Matt.* vii. 7, 8, *that every one that asketh shall receive*: And yet many ask and receive not, because they ask not as they ought. St. *James* iv. 3. Thus St. *Paul* tells us, *Rom.* x. 13. *That whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved*: which also certainly must be understood, provided they do it *worthily* and *perseverantly*; lest this Text contradict that other, St. *Matt.* vii. 21. *Not every one that saith to me Lord Lord shall enter into the kingdom of heaven, but he that doth the will of my Father which is in heaven*. Thus, in fine, *Christ* tells us, St. *Mark* xvi. 16. *He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved*. And yet many believe and are baptized, like *Simon Magus*, *Acts* viii. 13. who, for want of a true Change of Heart, or of Perseverance in Good, are never saved.

Q. But if those Words of *Christ*, St. *John* vi. 52, 53, &c. be understood of the *Sacrament*, will it not follow that no one can be saved without receiving this *Sacrament*; and that also in both Kinds; contrary to the Belief and Practice of the *Catholick Church*; since our Lord tells us, *Verse* 53. *Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except you eat the flesh of the Son of Man, and drink his blood, you have (or you shall have) no life in you*?

A. It

A. It follows from those Words that there is a divine Precept for the receiving this blessed Sacrament, which if Persons wilfully neglect, they cannot be saved. So that the receiving this Sacrament either actually, or in Desire, is necessary for all those that are come to Years of Discretion, [not for Infants, who are not capable of *discerning the body of the Lord*, 1 Cor. xi. 29.] But that this Sacrament should be received by all in *both kinds*, is not a divine Precept, nor ever was understood to be such by the Church of God; which always believed that under *either kind* Christ is received whole and entire, and consequently that under *either kind* we sufficiently comply with the Precept of receiving his *flesh and blood*.

2. Why may not those Words of Christ, St. John vi. 51, 52, 53. &c. be taken *figuratively*, so as to mean no more than the believing in his Incarnation and Death?

A. Because it would be too harsh a *Figure* of Speech, and unbecoming the Wisdom of the Son of God, to express the believing in him by such strange Metaphors as *eating his flesh, and drinking his Blood*; such as no Man ever used before or since; And to repeat and inculcate these Expressions so often, to the great Offence both of the *Jews*, and even of his own Disciples, who, upon this Account, *went back, and walked no more with him*; ver. 60, and 66; when he might so easily have satisfied both the one and the other, by telling them that he meant no more by all that Discourse, than that they should believe in him.

2. Did then the *Jews*, and those Disciples who cried out, ver. 60. *This is a hard saying, and who can bear it?* understand our Saviour right, or did they mistake his Meaning?

A. They understood him right, so far as relates to the real receiving his *Flesh and Blood*; but as to the

the M
since
whol
hend
and d
Man
gest a
ing h
refusi
not th
livin
Apost
ciples
we go
believ
living
Apost
what
run a
prove
sequen
ample
act (v
themf
becau
Life)
cry ou
and t
his C
2.
were
eating
A.
offend
ascend
variou
to sig
believing

the Manner of receiving they understood him not; since they had no Thoughts of his giving himself whole and entire, veil'd in a Sacrament; but apprehended the eating of his Flesh cut off from his Bones, and drinking of his Blood, according to the vulgar Manner of other Meat and Drink, which we digest and consume. However, their not *understanding* him seems not to have been so faulty as their refusing to *believe* him: Hence our Lord reprehends not their Want of Understanding, but their *not believing*, ver. 64. And *Peter*, in the Name of the Apostles, ver. 68, 69. in opposition to those Disciples that had fallen off, says, *Lord, to whom shall we go? Thou hast the words of eternal life. And we believe and are sure that thou art Christ the Son of the living God.* So that these People ought, like the Apostles, to have submitted themselves to believe what as yet they understood not; and not to have run away from him, who, by his evident Miracles, proved himself to be the Son of God, and consequently incapable of an Untruth. By which Example we may see how much more wisely Catholicks act (who, in this Mystery, like the Apostles, submit themselves to believe what they cannot comprehend, because they know that *Christ has the Words of eternal Life*) than those who, like the apostate Disciples, cry out, *This is a hard Saying, and who can hear it?* and thereupon will walk no more with *Christ* and his Church.

2. What did our Lord say to his Disciples who were offended with his Discourse concerning the eating of his Flesh?

A. He said unto them, ver. 61, 62. *Doth this offend you? What, and if ye shall see the Son of man ascend up where he was before?* Which Words are variously interpreted, and may either be understood to signify that they who made a Difficulty of believing that he could give them his Flesh to eat then

then whilst he was visibly amongst them, would have much more Difficulty of believing it after he was gone from them by his *Ascension*: Or else *Christ*, by mentioning his *Ascension*, would correct their mistaken Notion of his giving them his Flesh and Blood in that gross Manner which they apprehended: Or, in fine, he mentioned his *Ascension* into Heaven, to convince their Incredulity, by the Evidence of so great a Miracle, which at once was to demonstrate both his almighty Power and the Truth of his Words.

2. What is the Meaning of the following Words, ver. 63. *It is the Spirit that quickeneth, the flesh profiteth nothing: The Words that I speak unto you, they are spirit and they are life?*

A. The Meaning is, that the *Flesh separated from the Spirit*, in the Manner which the *Jews* and incredulous Disciples apprehended, would profit nothing: For what would it avail us to feed upon dead Flesh, separated from the Soul and Divinity, and consequently from the Life-giving Spirit? But then it would be Blasphemy to say that the *Flesh of Christ*, united to his Spirit (in that Manner in which the Catholick Church believes his Flesh to be in the blessed Sacrament accompanied with his Soul and Divinity) profits nothing: For if the *Flesh of Christ* were of no Profit, he would never have taken Flesh for us, and his Incarnation and Death would be unprofitable to us. Which is the Height of Blasphemy to affirm.

What means the Flesh profits nothing? says St. *Augustine*, writing upon this Text, Tract. 27, in *Joan*. *It profits nothing, as they understood it; for they understood Flesh as it is torn in Pieces in a dead Body, or sold in the Shambles; and not as it is animated by the Spirit. Wherefore it is said, the Flesh profits nothing, in the same Manner as it is said, Knowledge puffeth up, 1 Cor. viii. 1. Must we then fly from Knowledge?*

Know
ledge
Char
fieth
ledge
So b
Flesh
Char
fits m
would
in us.

Be
ture,
tion
Appr
50. 9
God.
revela
flesh
of G
And
them
ment.
Grace
tells t
spirit,

Other

2. H
of Ch
A.
courage

Knowledge? God forbid: what then means Knowledge puffeth up? That is; if it be alone without Charity; therefore the Apostle added, but Charity edifieth. Join therefore Charity to Knowledge, and Knowledge will be profitable, not by itself, but thro' Charity: So here also the Flesh profiteth nothing, viz. the Flesh alone: Let the Spirit be joined with the Flesh, as Charity is to be joined with Knowledge, and then it profits much. For if the Flesh profited nothing, the Word would not have been made Flesh, that he might dwell in us. So far St. Augustine.

Besides, according to the usual Phrase of the Scripture, *Flesh and Blood* are often taken for the Corruption of our Nature, or for Man's natural Sense and Apprehension, &c. As when it is said, 1 Cor. xv. 50. *That flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God.* And St. Matt. xvi. 17. *Flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, &c.* And in this Sense the *flesh profiteth nothing*; but it is the *Spirit and Grace* of God that *quickeneth* and giveth life to our Souls. And as the Words which our Lord had spoken to them tended to insinuate to them so great a Sacrament, in which they should receive this *Spirit, Grace and Life* in its very Fountain, therefore he tells them, *The words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life.*

S E C T. III.

Other Proofs of the real Presence of Christ's Body and Blood in the Blessed Sacrament.

Q. HAVE you any other Proofs from Scripture of the real Presence of the Body and Blood of *Christ* in the Blessed Sacrament?

A. Yes. 1 Cor. x. where the Apostle, to discourage Christians from having any Thing to do with
the

44 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

the Sacrifices offered to Idols, tells them, *ver. 16. That the cup of blessing which we bless is the communion of the BLOOD of Christ, and the bread which we break is the communion of the BODY of Christ.*

Secondly, *1 Cor. xi. 27. Wherefore whosoever shall eat this bread, or drink [v. 28] this cup of the Lord unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. How so, if what the unworthy Receiver takes be no more than Bread and Wine?*

Thirdly, *1 Cor. xi. 29. He that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, not discerning the body of our Lord. How shall he discern it, if it be not there really present?*

Q. Have you any Thing more to add by Way of Proof out of Scripture?

A. Yes, from the antient Figures of the Eucharist, which demonstrate that there is something more noble in it than Bread and Wine, taken only in Remembrance of *Christ*.

Q. What are those ancient Figures?

A. There are many; but I shall take notice chiefly of three, *viz. The Paschal Lamb, the Blood of the Testament, and the Manna from Heaven.*

Q. How do you prove that these three were Figures of the Eucharist?

A. I prove it with regard to the *Paschal Lamb* (which is acknowledg'd at all Hands to have been a Type of *Christ*) because 'tis visible, that the Rites and Ceremonies of it, prescribed *Exodus xii.* had chiefly relation to the *eating* of it; and consequently to this *typical Lamb* in the Old Testament, corresponds in the New Testament the *Lamb of God*, as *eaten* by his People in this Sacrament; which for this Reason was instituted immediately after our Lord had eat the Passover with his Disciples, that the Figure might be both explain'd and accomplish'd, and might make Way for the Truth. See concerning this Figure the current Sense of the Fathers in
Tertullian,

Tertullian, L. 4. in Marcionem. St. Cyprian, L. de unitate Ecclesiæ. St. Hierome, in c. 26. St. Matthæi. St. Chrysostome, Homil. de Proditione Judæ. St. Augustine, L. 2. contra Literas Petiliani, c. 37. St. Gaudentius, Tract. 2. in Exod. St. Cyril of Alexandria, contra Nestor, p. 112. Theodoret in 1 Cor. xi. St. Leo, Serm. 7. de Passione Domini. Hesychius in c. 23. Levit. St. Gregory Hom. 22. in Evang.

Secondly, That the *Blood of the Testament*, with which *Moses* sprinkled the People, *Exod. xxiv.* and *Heb. ix.* saying, *This is the blood of the testament which God hath enjoyn'd to you*, was a Figure of the *Blood of Christ* in this Sacrament, our Lord himself sufficiently declared, by evidently alluding to this Figure, when he gave the Cup to his Disciples, saying, *This is my blood of the New Testament*, *St. Matt. xxvi. 28. St. Mark xiv. 24. or, This cup is the New Testament in my blood, St. Luke xxii. 20. 1 Cor. xi. 25.*

Thirdly, That the *Manna* was a Figure of this Sacrament, appears from *St. John vi. 58. Your Fathers did eat manna, and are dead; he that eateth of this bread shall live for ever.* And from *1 Cor. x.* where the Apostle speaking of the Figures of our Sacraments in the Old Law, and taking notice of the *Cloud*, and the Passage of the *Red Sea*, as Figures of *Baptism*, *ver. 1 and 2; in the 3d and 4th Verse*, gives the *Manna* and the *Water from the Rock* as Figures of the *Eucharist*. The same is the current Doctrine of the Holy Fathers, and is sufficiently demonstrated from the Analogy which is found between the *Manna* and this Blessed Sacrament. For which see the Annotations, in the *Doway Bible*, upon the xvith Chapter of *Exodus*.

2. How do you prove from these ancient Figures the real Presence of *Christ's Body* and *Blood* in this Sacrament?

A. Because

46 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

A. Because if in this Sacrament there were nothing more than Bread and Wine, taken in Remembrance of *Christ*, and as Types and Figures of his Body and Blood, then would the Figures of the Old Law equal the Sacraments of the New Law, yea far excell them. For who does not see that the *Paschal Lamb* was a more noble Type, and far better representing *Christ* than Bread and Wine? Who does not perceive that the *Blood* of Victims, solemnly sacrificed to God, was a better Figure of *Christ's Blood* than the Juice of the Grape? Who can question but the heavenly *Manna*, which is called the *Bread of Angels*, and was so many Ways miraculous, was far beyond the *Bread of Men*? Who will not acknowledge that it is something more Excellent and Divine to foretell Things to come, than only to commemorate Things past: It must therefore be visible to every Christian, that if the *Paschal Lamb*, the *Blood of the Testament*, and the *Manna*, were Types of *Christ*, given to us in this Sacrament, that this Sacrament itself must be something more than a Type, Figure, or Remembrance of *Christ*, and consequently must contain and exhibit him really to us.

2. But why may not a Person suppose that the Figures of the Old Testament might equal or excel the Sacraments of the New?

A. No one that pretends to the Name of Christian can suppose this; since the Apostle assures us, that the Old Law had nothing but a *shadow of the good things to come*, *Heb. x. 1.* that all its Sacrifices and Sacraments were but *weak and beggarly elements*, *Gal. iv. 9.* and that it was annulled by Reason of the *weakness and unprofitableness thereof*, *Heb. vii. 18.* And does not the very Nature of the Thing assure us that the Figure must be inferior to the Thing prefigured?

2. Have

Q. Have you any other Argument from Scripture in Favour of the real Presence of our Lord's Body in the Blessed Sacrament?

A. Yes. Those innumerable Texts of Scripture which prove the *Unerring Authority* of the Church of *Christ*, and the indispensable Obligation of the Faithful to follow the Judgment of the Church, and to rest in her Decisions, plainly demonstrate that to be Truth which the Church has so long ago declared with relation to this Controversy; and that all Christians are obliged to yield to this Decision.

Q. When did the Church decide this Matter?

A. As soon as ever it was call'd in Question, that is, about seven hundred Years ago, in the Days of *Berengarius*, who was the first that openly attacked the Doctrine of the real Presence, and was thereupon condemn'd by the whole Church in no less than fourteen Councils, held during his Lifetime in divers Parts of *Christendom*; and the Determination of these Councils was afterwards confirm'd by the General Councils of *Lateran*, *Constance*, and *Trent*.

Q. What Scripture do you bring to shew that all Christians are obliged to submit to these Decisions of the Councils and Pastors of the Church?

A. *St. Matt. xviii. 17. If he neglect to hear the Church, let him be to thee as a heathen and a publican. St. Luke x. 16. He that heareth you heareth me, and he that despiseth you despiseth me, and he that despiseth me despiseth him that sent me. St. John xx. 21. As my Father hath sent me even so I send you. Heb. xiii. 7. Remember them which have the rule over you, who have spoken unto you the word of God, whose faith follow. Ver. 17. Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves. I St. John iv. 6. He that knoweth God heareth us [the Pastors of the Church] he that is not of God heareth not us: by this we know the*

the spirit of truth and the spirit of error. And what Wonder that Christ should require this Submission to his Church, and her Pastors and Teachers, whom he has given for the perfecting of Saints, &c. that we henceforth be no more Children toss'd to and fro, and carried about with every Wind of Doctrine--- Since even in the Old Law he required, under Pain of Death, a Submission to the Synagogue and her Ministers, in their Decisions relating to the Controversies of the Law; as may be seen, *Deut. xvii. 8, 9, &c.*

Q. What Scripture do you bring to shew that the Church is not liable to be mistaken in these Decisions?

A. This is evidently proved from a great many Texts both of the Old and New Testaments: In which we are assured, 1st, That the Church is the pillar and ground of the truth; and consequently not liable to Error, *1 Tim. iii. 15.* 2^{dly}, That Christ has built his church upon a rock, and that the gates of hell [the Powers of Darkness and Error] shall not prevail against her, *St. Matt. xvi. 18.* 3^{dly}, That Christ (who is the way, the truth, and the life, *St. John xvi. 6.*) will always be with the Teachers of his Church, even to the end of the world, *St. Matt. xxviii. 20.* 4^{thly}, That the Holy Ghost, the spirit of truth, shall abide for ever, with these same Teachers of the Church, *St. John xiv. 16, 17.* and guide them into all truth, *c. xvi. 13.* 5^{thly}, That God has made a Covenant with the Church, that his Spirit, and his Words, which he has put in her Mouth at the Time when our Redeemer came, should not depart out of her mouth, nor out of the mouth of her seed, nor out of the mouth of her seed's seed, from henceforth and for ever, *Isaiah lix. 20, 21.* 6^{thly}, That God has made a solemn Oath to his Church, like that which he made to Noah, that he would not be wroth with her, nor rebuke her, *Isaiah liv.*

9, 10. That he has promised to be her *everlasting light*, *Isaiah* lx. 18, 19, &c. And to *set his sanctuary in the midst of her for evermore*, *Ezek.* xxxvii. 26. All which is inconsistent with her being led astray by damnable Errors. And thus the Scripture, by plainly giving Testimony to the Church and Church Authority, plainly also gives Testimony to the Truth of *Christ's* real Presence in the Eucharist, which has been so often declared by that Authority.

2. Besides these Arguments from Scripture and Church Authority, have you any Thing else to alledge in Proof of the *real Presence*?

A. Yes. 1st, The Authority of all the antient Fathers, whose plain Testimonies may be seen in an Appendix to a Book, entitled, *A Specimen of the Spirit of the Dissenting Teachers*, &c. Anno 1736.

Secondly, The perpetual Consent of the *Greeks*, and all the Oriental Christians, demonstrated by *Monsieur Arnauld* and the *Abbé Renaudot*, in their Books, bearing Title, *La Perpetuité de la Foy*, &c. confirmed by the authentick Testimonies * of their

D

Patriarchs,

* See the Testimony of seven *Archbishops* of the *Greek Church*, *Perpetuité*, Vol. III. p. 569. The Testimonies of the *Archbishops* and Clergy of the *Isles* of the *Archipelago*, &c. p. 572, &c. Of divers *Abbots* and *Religious*, Chap. IV. and V. Of four *Patriarchs* of *Constantinople*, of the *Patriarch* of *Alexandria*, and of thirty-five *Metropolitans* or *Archbishops*, Anno 1672. Chap. VI. p. 623. Of the Churches of *Georgia* and *Mingrelia*, Chap. VII. p. 634. Of the *Patriarch* of *Jerusalem*, and of several other *Archbishops*, *Abbots*, &c. p. 703. Of *Macarius* and *Neophytus*, *Patriarchs* of *Antioch*, p. 723, &c. Of *Methodius*, *Patriarch* of *Constantinople*, *Reponse Generale*, p. 151. See also the *Orthodox Confession* of the Oriental Church, sign'd by the four *Patriarchs*, and many other *Bishops*, *ibidem*; p. 138. That the same is the Faith of the *Armenians*, is proved by the Testimonies of *Havindaur*, an *Armenian* Prelate, and of *Uscanus*, *Bishop* of *St. Sergius*; also of *David* the *Patriarch*, and other *Bishops* and *Priests* of the *Armenians*, given at *Ale po*, An. 1668. In the Appendix to the first Volume of the *Perpetuité*, p. 78, 81, 82. Of *James*, *Patriarch* of the *Greater Armenia*, and many other *Bishops* and *Priests*. *Reponse Generale*, L. I. Chap. XVIII. Of the *Archbishops* of the *Armenians* in *Constantinople*, *Adrianople*, and *Amasée*, *ibid.* Of *Cruciatorus*, *Patriarch* of the *Lesser Armenia*,

Patriarchs, Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, &c. by the Decrees of their Synods*, against Cyril Lucar, by the Writings of their ancient † and modern Divines; and by all their Liturgies: And acknowledged by many ‡ Protestant Witnesses. Now what can be a more convincing Evidence of this Doctrine's having been handed down by Tradition from the Apostles, than to see all Sorts of Christians, which have any Pretensions to Antiquity, all agreeing in it.

Armenia, with other Bishops and Priests, *An.* 1672, tom. 3. *Perpetuité*, p. 774. Of the *Armenians* of *Grand Cairo*, *An.* 1671. And of several Bishops at *Ispahan* the same Year, *ibid.* p. 775 and 778. See also in the first and third Volume of the *Perpetuité*, and in the *Response Generale* many other Attestations of the Belief of the *Mucrovites*, *Jacobites*, or *Surians*, *Coptes*, *Maronites*, and *Nestorians*, touching the real Presence and Transubstantiation.

* See the Acts of the Synod of *Constantinople*, under the Patriarch *Cyril of Beræa*, *Ann.* 1639. And of the Synod under the Patriarch *Parthenius*, *Ann.* 1642. And of the Synod of *Cyprus*, *An.* 1668.

† See (besides the Testimonies of the Greek Fathers of the first six Centuries) *Anastasi*, of *Sina*, in his *Odegos*, *Germanus*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, in his *Theoria*, *St. John Damascene* *Orat.* 3. *de Imaginibus*, *Lib.* 2. *Parallel.* c. 5. *L.* 4. *Fidei Orthodoxæ*, c. 13. The second Council of *Nice*, of 350 Bishops, *Act* 6. *Elias Cret.* Comment in *Orat.* 1. *St. Greg. Naz. Nicephorus*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, *Antirbetico* 2. *Theodorus Studtes*, *Antirbetico* 1. Num. 10. *Theophylactus* ad *Cap.* 26. *St. Matthæi.* *Euthymius*, in *Matt.* 26. *Samonas*, Bishop of *Gaza*, in *Discept. contra Achmed Saracenum*, *Nicholas* of *Metbone*, de *Corp. & Sang. Christi.* *Nicholas Cabasilas.* *Mark* of *Ephesus* and *Bessarion*; qui omnes in suis opusculis, says Bishop *Forbes*, de *Euch.* *L.* 1. c. 3. *apertissime Transubstantiationem consentiunt.* *Jeremias Patriarcha*, in *Resp.* 1 and 2 ad *Lutheranos.* *Gabriel Philadelph.* de *Sacrament.* The *Greeks* of *Venice*, in *Resp.* ad *Cardinal Gai.* *Agapius*, &c. See also in the two additional Volumes of *Renaudot* to the *Perpetuité de la Foy*, &c. the concurrent Testimonies of the Divines of the other *Oriental Sects*, and of all their Liturgies.

‡ Sir *Edwin Sandys's* Relation of the Religions of the *West*, p. 233. Dr. *Potter's* Answer to *Charity mistaken*, p. 225. Bishop *Forbes* de *Euch.* *L.* 1. c. 3. p. 412. *Crusius* in *Germano-græcia*, *L.* 5. p. 226. *Banauverus*, *L. de Eccles. Græc.-bodierna*, p. 46. &c. Hence Dr. *Philip Nicolai*, a Protestant, in his first Book of the *Kingdom of Christ*, p. 22. writeth thus: "Let my Christian Readers be assured, that not only the Churches of the *Greeks*, but also the *Russians*, and the *Georgians*, and the *Armenians*, and the *Indians*, and the *Ethiopians*, as many of them as believe in *Christ*, hold the true and real Presence of the Body and Blood of the Lord, &c."

Thirdly,

Thirdly, Both ancient and modern Church-history furnish us with many Instances of Miracles the best attested, which from time to time have been wrought in Testimony of this same Truth; of which, in divers Parts of *Christendom*, there are standing Monuments to this Day. It would be too tedious to descend to Particulars, and so much the less necessary, because all the Miracles of *Jesus Christ* himself, as they prove that he could not be a Liar, so they demonstrate that what he gives us in this Sacrament is verily and indeed his Body and Blood, as he has so clearly told us.

S E C T. IV.

Transubstantiation proved. Objections answered.

Q. WHAT do you understand by *Transubstantiation*?

A. That the Bread and Wine in the blessed Sacrament are truly, really and substantially *changed* by Consecration into the Body and Blood of *Christ*.

Q. In what then does the Catholick Doctrine of *Transubstantiation* differ from the *Consubstantiation* maintained by the *Lutherans*?

A. It differs in this, that *Luther* and his Followers maintain the real Presence of the Body and Blood of *Christ* in the Bread and Wine, or *with* the Bread and Wine: Whereas the Catholick Church believes that the Bread and Wine are *converted into* the Body and Blood of *Christ*, so that there remains nothing of the inward Substance of the Bread and Wine after Consecration, but only the outward Appearances or Accidents.

Q. How do you prove this *Transubstantiation*?

D 2

A. First,

A. First, From the Texts of Scripture above quoted, especially from the Words of the Institution, St. *Matt.* xxvi. 26, &c. and from the Words of *Christ*, St. *John* vi. 51, &c. for our Lord, when he first gave the blessed Sacrament, did not say, *In this, or with this, is my Body and Blood*; but he said, *This is my Body*, and *This is my Blood*. Neither did he say, St. *John* vi. 51. *In the bread that I will give, will I give you my flesh*, &c. but he said, *The bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world*.

Secondly, From the Tradition of the antient Fathers, whose Doctrine may be seen in the Book above quoted.

Thirdly, From the Authority and Decision of the Church of God, in her general Councils of *Lateran*, *Constance*, and *Trent*.

And indeed, supposing that the Words of *Christ*, in the Institution of the blessed Sacrament, are to be taken according to the Letter, as both Catholicks and *Lutherans* agree, the most learned Protestants have often urged against *Luther* and his Followers, that the Catholick *Transubstantiation* is more agreeable to the Letter of *Christ's* Words, than the *Lutheran Consubstantiation*. See the Bishop of *Meaux's* *Histoire des Variations*, L. 2. Num. 31, 32, 33.

Q. But does not St. *Paul*, 1 *Corinth.* x. and xi. speaking of the Sacrament after Consecration, call it *Bread*?

A. He does; and so do we, 1st, Because it is the *Bread of Life*, the Food and Nourishment of the Soul. 2^{dly}, Because it still retains the Qualities and Accidents of *Bread*; and has the whole outward Appearance of *Bread*; and therefore, according to the Scripture-phrase, is called *Bread*, as Angels, appearing in the Shape of Men, are oftentimes in Scripture called Men. See St. *Luke* xxiv. 4. *Acts* i. 10, &c. 3^{dly}, Because it was consecrated from *Bread*, and therefore,

therefore, according to the Method of speaking usual in Scripture, is called *Bread*, because it was made from *Bread*; as Man is called *Dust*, Gen. iii. 19. because made out of *Dust*; and the Serpent is called a *Rod*, Exod. vii. 12. because made from a *Rod*, &c.

Besides, we have two very good Interpreters, that informs us what this *Bread* is, of which St. Paul is there speaking, viz. the same Apostle, when he tells us, 1 Cor. x. 16. that *The bread which we break is the communion of the body of Christ*; and our Saviour himself, when he tells us, St. John vi. 51. *The bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.*

2. But what will you say to our Saviour's calling the Sacrament the *Fruit of the Vine*, St. Matt. xxvi. 29?

A. If it were certain our Saviour had so called the *consecrated Wine* of the blessed Sacrament, it would prove no more than St. Paul's calling the other Kind *Bread*; that is, it would only shew that the Name of *Wine*, or the *Fruit of the Vine*, might be given to it, from having the Accidents and Appearance of *Wine*, and having been consecrated from *Wine*. But there is all the Reason in the World to think, that this Appellation of the *Fruit of the Vine* was given by our Saviour, not to the *Consecrated Cup* or *Chalice*, but to the *Wine* of the Paschal Supper, which they drank before the Institution of the Sacrament. This appears evident from St. Luke, who thus relates the whole Matter, Chap. xxii.

Ver. 14. *When the hour was come he sat down, and the twelve Apostles with him.*

15. *And he said unto them, With desire I have desired to eat this passover with you before I suffer.*

16. *For I say unto you, I will not any more eat thereof, untill it be fulfilled in the Kingdom of God.*

17. *And he took the cup and gave thanks, and said, Take this and divide it among yourselves.*

18. *For I say unto you, I will not drink of the fruit of the vine, until the kingdom of God shall come.*

19. *And he took bread, and gave thanks, and brake it, and gave unto them, saying, This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me.*

20. *Likewise also the cup after supper, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood, which is shed for you.*

21. *But behold the hand of him that betrayeth me is with me on the table, &c.*

Where 'tis visible, that it was not the Sacramental Cup, but that which was drank with the Passover, to which our Saviour gives the Name of the *Fruit of the Vine*.

Q. But if the Bread and Wine do not remain after Consecration, what then becomes of them?

A. They are changed by the Consecration into the Body and Blood of *Christ*.

Q. How can Bread and Wine be changed into the Body and Blood of *Christ*?

A. By the Almighty Power of God, to whom nothing is hard or impossible, who formerly changed Water into Blood, and a Rod into a Serpent, *Exod. vii.* and Water into Wine, *St. John ii.* and who daily changes Bread and Wine by Digestion into our Body and Blood.

Q. But do not all our Senses bear Testimony, that the Bread and Wine still remain?

A. No: They only bear Testimony that there remains the Colour and Taste of Bread and Wine, as indeed there does; but as to the inward Substance, this is not the Object of any of the Senses, nor can be perceived by any of them.

Q. Are not our Senses then deceived in this Case?

A. Properly

A. Properly speaking they are not, because they truly represent what is truly there, *viz.* the Colour, Shape, Taste, &c. of Bread and Wine. But 'tis the Judgment is deceived, when upon Account of this Colour, Shape, Taste, &c. it too hastily pronounces that this is Bread and Wine.

Q. But are we not sufficiently authorized by the Testimony of the Senses to make a Judgment of a Thing's being in Effect that which it has all the Appearances of?

A. Regularly speaking we are, when neither Reason nor divine Authority interposes itself to oblige us to make another Judgment. And thus the Miracles and Resurrection of *Christ* were demonstrated to the Apostles by the Testimony of their Senses. But the Case would have been altered if God himself had assured them that what appeared to be Flesh and Bones was indeed another Thing: For in such a Case they ought certainly to have believed the Testimony of God rather than their own Senses.

Q. Can you give me any Instances in which the Testimony of Man's Senses has represented one Thing, and the divine Authority of God's Word has assured us that it was not indeed what it appeared to be, but quite another Thing?

A. Yes, we have many such Instances in Scripture; as when Angels have appeared in the Shape of Men, *Gen. xix.* St. *Matt. xxviii.* St. *Mark xvi.* &c. and the Holy Ghost in the Shape of a Dove, St. *Luke iii. 22,* &c.

Q. Is there not then any of our Senses that we may trust to, in relation to the Judgment that we are to make concerning the inward Part of the Sacrament of the Eucharist?

A. Yes, we may safely trust to the Sense of hearing; which informs us, by the Word of God, and the Authority of the Church of God, that what appears to be Bread and Wine in this Sacrament,

is indeed the Body and Blood of *Christ*: Now *Faith comes by hearing*, says St. Paul, *Rom. x. 17. and hearing by the Word of God.*

Q. But if the Substance of the Bread and Wine be not there, what is it then that gives Nourishment to our Bodies, when we receive this Sacrament?

A. This Sacrament was not ordained for the Nourishment of the Body, but of the Soul; tho' I do not deny but the Body also is nourished when we receive the blessed Eucharist, not by the Substance of Bread and Wine, which is not there, nor by the Body and Blood of *Christ*, which is incorruptible, and therefore cannot be digested for our corporal Nourishment; but by the Quantity and other Accidents of the Bread and Wine (if with the *Aristotelian* Philosophers you suppose them really distinguished from Matter and Substance) or by another Substance, which the Almighty substitutes, when, by the ordinary Course of Digestion, the Sacramental Species are changed, and the Body and Blood of *Christ* cease to be there.

Q. But how can the Accidents of Bread and Wine remain without the Substance?

A. By the Almighty Power of God: Which Answer, if it satisfy you not, I remit you to the *Cartesian* Philosophers, who will tell you, that as the Body and Blood of *Christ* in the Sacrament are contained precisely in the same Circumscription and Dimensions as the Bread and Wine were before the Consecration, it follows of course that they must affect our Senses in the same Manner: Now Colour, Taste, &c. according to modern Philosophy, are nothing but the Affections of our Senses. See *Purchot, Part 1. Phys. Sect. 5. Cap. 1.*

Q. How can the whole Body and Blood of *Christ* be contained in so small a Space as that of the Host; nay, even in the smallest sensible Particle of it?

A. By

A. By the same Almighty Power by which a Camel can pass thro' the Eye of a Needle: *With Men this is impossible*, says our Saviour, St. Matt. xix. 26. and St. Mark x. 27. *but not with God; for with God all things are possible.*

Q. How can the Body of *Christ* be both in Heaven, and at the same Time in so many Places upon Earth?

A. By the same Almighty Power of God, which we profess in the very first Article of our Creed, when we say, *I believe in God, the Father Almighty.* So that it is a Question better becoming an Infidel than a Christian, to ask, *How this can be?* when we are speaking of a God to whom nothing is impossible; and who would not be God indeed, if he could not do infinitely more than we can conceive. It is like the *Jewish* Question, St. John vi. 52. *How can this man give us his flesh to eat?* As if the Power of God were not as incomprehensible as himself; and as if it were not worse than Madness for weak Mortals to pretend to fathom this immense Depth of the Power of the Almighty, by the short Line and Plummet of human Reason.

Q. But is it not an evident Contradiction for the same Body to be at once in two Places?

A. Not at all; no more than for one God to subsist in three distinct Persons; or one Person in two Natures; or one Soul to be at once both in the Head and in the Heart, or two Bodies to be at once in the self-same Place; as when *Christ's* Body came into the Disciples, the Doors being shut, St. John xx. 26. or the same Body, after having returned to Dust, to be many Ages after restored at the Resurrection.

Q. How do you prove there is no evident Contradiction in any of all these Things?

A. Because Thousands of as good Philosophers and Divines as any are, cannot see any such Contradiction;

diction; which is a plain Demonstration there is no Evidence in this Case; and consequently it would be the highest Rashness to deny the Possibility of these Things to the Power of the Almighty.

Q. But what need was there that *Christ* should leave us his real Body and Blood in this Sacrament; since without this real Presence he might have bequeathed the self-same Graces to our Souls?

A. He might indeed, if so he had pleased; as he might also have brought about the Salvation of Mankind, if he had so pleased, without becoming Man himself, and dying upon the Cross for us: But he chose these wondrous Ways as most suitable to his Love, and most proper to excite us to love him. And who shall presume to call him to an Account why he has condescended so far?

Q. But are not the Body and Blood of *Christ* liable to be hurt and abused in this Sacrament?

A. The Body and Blood of *Christ* is now immortal, impassible, and incorruptible, and consequently not liable to be hurt, nor divided, nor corrupted: Tho' it may be said indeed to be abused by the unworthy Communicant; and upon that Account St. Paul, 1 Cor. xi. 27. says, that such a one is guilty of the Body and Blood of *Christ*: But this Abuse no more hurts the immortal Body of *Christ*, than this or any other Crime can hurt or violate his Divinity.

S E C T. V.

Of the Bread and Wine made use of in this Sacrament.

Q. **W**HAT Kind of Bread does the Church make use of for the Sacrament of the Eucharist?

A. The

A. The Church of *Rome* makes use of *Wafers* of *unleavened Bread*; that is, of Bread made of fine wheaten Flower, with no other Mixture but pure Water.

Q. Why does not the Church make use of common Bread for this Sacrament?

A. Because she follows the Example of *Christ*, who, at his last Supper, when he first instituted and gave the blessed Sacrament to his Disciples, made use of *unleavened Bread*.

Q. How do you prove that?

A. I prove it, because the Day in which *Christ* first gave the blessed Sacrament was, according to *St. Matt.* xxvi. 17. *St. Mark* xiv. 12. and *St. Luke* xxii. 7. *the first day of unleavened bread.* Now upon that Day, and upon the whole following Week, there was no other Bread to be found in *Israel*; and it was even Death to use any other but unleavened Bread, as we learn from *Exod.* xii. 15. *Seven days shall ye eat unleavened bread, even the first day ye shall put away leaven out of your houses: For whosoever eateth leavened bread from the first day until the seventh day, that soul shall be cut off from Israel.* Ver. 19. *Seven days there shall be no leaven found in your houses, &c.* So that it is plain that our Saviour made use of *unleavened Bread* at his last Supper, and that there was no other Bread used at that Time.

Q. Is there any other Reason why we should prefer *unleavened Bread*?

A. Yes, unleavened Bread is an Emblem or Symbol of *Sincerity* and *Truth*. Hence *St. Paul* admonishes us, *1 Cor.* v. 7, and 8. to *purge out the old leaven of malice and wickedness, and to feast with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.*

Q. What Kind of Wine do you make use of for this Sacrament?

A. Wine

A. Wine of the Grape, with which, by apostolical Tradition, we mingle a little Water.

Q. Has the Practice of mingling Water with Wine been always observed from the Apostles Days?

A. It certainly has, and that throughout the whole Church: See *St. Justin, Apolog. 2.* *St. Irenaeus, L. 5. c. 2.* *St. Cyprian, Epistola 63. ad Cæcilium, &c.*

Q. Did *Christ*, when he gave the Cup to his Disciples, mingle Water with the Wine?

A. 'Tis probable he did; tho' the Scripture neither mentions the Water nor the Wine; but only speaks of his giving them the Cup: However, the antient and universal Practice of the Church, in all Probability, comes originally from the Example of *Christ*.

Q. Is there not some Mystery or secret Meaning in the mingling the Water with the Wine in the Chalice?

A. Yes, it represents to us, first the Union of the Human and Divine Nature in the Person of the Son of God; 2dly, the Union of the Faithful with *Christ* their Head; 3dly, the Water and Blood that flow'd from the Side of *Christ*.

Q. Why did our Lord appoint *Bread* and *Wine* for the Matter of this Sacrament?

A. 1st, Because Bread and Wine being most nourishing to the Body, were the most proper to represent the Grace of this Sacrament, which is the Food and Nourishment of the Soul. 2dly, Because *Bread* and *Wine* are both composed of many Individuals, (*viz.* Grains or Grapes) made one by a perfect Union of them all; and therefore, as the holy Fathers take notice, are a most proper Type or Symbol of *Christ's* mystical Body the Church, and of that Unity which our Lord would recommend to the Faithful by this Sacrament. Accord-

ing

ing to that of St. Paul, 1 Cor. x. 17. *We being many, are one bread, and one body, for we are all partakers of that one bread.*

Q. What other Things are signified or represented by the outward Forms of *Bread* and *Wine* in this Sacrament?

A. They are chiefly designed to signify or represent to us three Things; the one now past, viz. *The Passion of Christ*, of which they are the *Remembrance*; another really present, viz. *the Body and Blood of Christ*, of which they are the *Veil*; a third to come, viz. *Everlasting Life*, of which they are the *Pledge*.

S E C T. VI.

Of Communion in one Kind.

Q. WHY don't the Faithful in the Catholick Church receive under the Form of Wine, as well as under the Form of Bread?

A. The Catholick Church has always look'd upon it to be a Thing indifferent, whether the Faithful receive in one Kind or in both; because she has always believed that they receive *Jesus Christ* himself, the Fountain of all Grace, as much in one Kind as in both: But her Custom and Discipline for many Ages has been, to administer this Sacrament to the Laity only in one Kind, viz. under the Form of Bread, by reason of the Danger of spilling the Blood of *Christ*, if all were to receive the Cup: Which Discipline was confirmed by the general Council of *Constance*, in Opposition to the *Hussites*, who had the Rashness to condemn in this Point the Practice of the universal Church.

Q. Did the Catholick Church never allow of the Communion in both Kinds?

A. She

A. She did, and may again, if she pleases; for this is a Matter of Discipline, which the Church may regulate and alter, as she shall see most expedient for the Good of her Children.

Q. What do you mean, when you say this is a Matter of *Discipline*; I thought *Communion in one Kind* had been looked upon in the Catholick Church as a Matter of *Faith*?

A. You must distinguish in this Case, between that which is of *Faith*, and that which is of *Discipline* only. 'Tis a Matter of *Faith* that under one Kind we receive *Christ* whole and entire, and the true Sacrament; and that there is no Command of *Christ* for all the Faithful to receive in both Kinds: So far both is and ever was the *Faith* of the Catholick Church; for her *Faith* is unalterable. But then whether the blessed Sacrament should actually be administer'd to the Laity in one Kind or in both, that is to say, what is most proper or expedient for the Church to practice or ordain in this particular, considering the Circumstances of Time, Place, &c. this is what I call a Matter of *Discipline*, which may be different in different Ages, without any Alteration of the *Faith* of the Church.

Q. But did not *Christ* command the receiving in both Kinds, *St. Matt. xxvi. 27. Drink ye all of it.*

A. These Words were address'd to the twelve Apostles, who were *all* that were then present; and the Precept was by them all fulfilled; *And they all drank of it, St. Mark xiv. 23.* Now 'tis certain, that many Things were spoken in the Gospel to the Apostles in quality of Pastors of the Church, which were not directed to the Laity; as when they were commission'd to preach and baptize, *St. Matt. xxviii. 19, 20.* and to absolve Sinners, *St. John xx. 22.* and upon this very Occasion to *do what Christ* had done; that is, to consecrate and administer this Sacrament *in remembrance of him, St. Luke xxii. 19.*

And

And consequently, 'tis no Argument that *all* are obliged to drink of the Cup, because *Christ* commanded *all* the Apostles to drink of it; no more than that all are obliged to consecrate the Sacrament, because *Christ* commanded all the Apostles to do it. For both these Commands were delivered at the same Time, upon the same Occasion, and to the same Persons.

Q. But why should the Apostles and their Successors the Bishops and Priests of the Church be commanded to drink of the Cup rather than the Laity? Or why should *Christ*, at the first Institution of the Sacrament, consecrate and give it in both Kinds, if all Christians were not always to receive it in both Kinds?

A. To satisfy both these Queries at once, you are to take notice, that the blessed Eucharist, according to the Faith of the Catholick Church, and as we shall shew hereafter, is a *Sacrifice* as well as a *Sacrament*; and of this Sacrifice, by the Institution of *Christ*, the Apostles, and their Successors the Bishops and Priests of the Church, are the Ministers; whom he has commanded to offer it in Remembrance of his Death, St. *Luke* xxii. 19. Now this *Sacrifice* in Remembrance of *Christ's* Death, for the more lively representing the Separation of *Christ's* Blood from his Body, requires the separate *Consecration* of both Kinds; and therefore the Priests, that are the Ministers of this Sacrifice, receive at that Time in both Kinds; and *Christ*, in the first Institution of this Sacrifice, consecrated and gave both Kinds, designing without doubt that it should be so received, at least by the Ministers.

Q. But why should not the Nature of the Sacrament as much require both Kinds to be received by all, as the Nature of the Sacrifice requires both Kinds to be consecrated?

A. Be-

A. Because the Nature of the Sacrament consists in being the *Sign* and *Cause* of Grace; now under either Kind there is both a sufficient *Sign* of Grace, *viz.* of the Nourishment of the Soul, and at the same time the Fountain and *Cause* of all Grace, by the real Presence of *Christ*, in whom are locked up all the Treasures of Grace; so that the Nature of the Sacrament sufficiently subsists in either Kind. But the Nature of the Sacrifice particularly requires the exhibiting to God the Body and Blood of his Son under the Veils that represent the shedding of his Blood, and his Death; and therefore the Nature of the Sacrifice requires the separate Consecration of both Kinds; which being consecrated, must be received by some one, and by no one more properly than by the Minister.

2. Does not *Christ* say, *St. John vi. 53. Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, ye have no Life in you?*

A. He does: And in the same Chapter, *ver. 57, 58.* he tells us, *He that eateth me, even he shall live by me; and, He that eateth of this bread, shall live for ever.* Which Texts are easily reconciled, if we consider, that according to the Catholick Doctrine, and according to the Truth, whosoever receives the Body of *Christ* most certainly receives his Blood at that same time; since the Body which he receives is a living Body (for *Christ* can die no more, *Rom. vi. 9.*) which cannot be without the Blood. There is no taking *Christ* by Pieces; whoever receives him, receives him whole.

2. But are not the Faithful deprived of a great Part of the Grace of this Sacrament, by receiving only in one Kind?

A. No. Because the Grace of this Sacrament being annexed to the real Presence of *Christ*, who is the Fountain of all Grace; and *Christ* being as truly and really present in one Kind as in both, consequently

frequently he brings with him the same Grace to the Soul when received in one Kind, as he does when received in both.

Q. Is it not then a Privilege granted to the Priests above the Laity to receive in both Kinds?

A. No. Their receiving in both Kinds, as often as they say Mass, is no Privilege, but the Consequence of the Sacrifice which they have been offering, as you may gather from what I have told you already: For as for other Times, when they are not saying Mass, no Priest, Bishop or Pope, even upon his Death-bed, ever receives otherwise than in one Kind?

Q. Have you any thing more to add in Favour of Communion in one Kind?

A. Yes; 1st. That the Scripture in many Places speaking of the Holy Communion, makes no mention of the Cup. See St. *Luke* xxiv. 30, 31. *Acts* ii. 42, 46. xx. 7. *1 Cor.* x. 17. 2^{dly}, That the Scripture promises Life eternal to them that receive in one Kind, St. *John* vi. 51, 57, 58. 3^{dly}, That the ancient Church most certainly allowed of Communion in one Kind, and practised it on many Occasions. See *Tertullian*, L. 2. *ad Uxorem*, c. 5. St. *Denys of Alexandria*, *Epist. ad Fabium Antioch.* recorded by *Eusebius*, L. 6. *Histor.* c. 34. St. *Cyprian*, L. *de Lapsis*. St. *Basil*, *Epist.* 269. St. *Ambrose de Satyro Fratris*. *Paulinus in Vita Ambrosii*, &c. 4^{thly}, That many learned Protestants have acknowledged, that there is no Command in Scripture for all to receive in both Kinds. See *Luther*, in his Epistle to the *Bohemians*. *Spalatensis de Rep. Eccles.* L. 5. c. 6. Bishop *Forbes*, L. 2. *de Eucharist.* c. 1, 2. *White*, Bishop of *Ely*, *Treatise on the Sabbath*, p. 97. Bishop *Montag*. *Orig.* p. 97.

Q. But what would you say further to a scrupulous Soul, which through the Prejudice of a Protestant Education could not be perfectly easy upon this Article?

A. I

A. I should remit such a Person to the Church and her Authority, and all those divine Promises recorded in Scripture, by which we are assured, that in hearing the Church and her Pastors we are secure; that *Christ* and his Holy Spirit shall be always with them, to guide them into all Truth; and that the Gates of Hell shall never prevail against this Authority. So that a Christian Soul has nothing to fear, in conforming herself to the Authority and Practice of the Church of God; but very much, in pretending to be wiser than the Church, or making a Scruple to hear and obey her spiritual Guides.

S E C T. VII.

Of the Manner of administering this blessed Sacrament: Of Devotion before and after Communion: Of the Obligation of receiving it; and of its Effects.

2. **I**N what Manner is the Blessed Eucharist administered to the People?

A. After the Communion of the Priest in the Mass, such of the People as are to communicate, go up to the Rail before the Altar, and there kneel down; and taking the Towel, hold it before their Breasts, in such Manner, that, if in communicating, it should happen that any Particle should fall, it may not fall to the Ground, but be received upon the Towel. Then the Clerk, in the Name of all the Communicants, says the *Confiteor*, or the general Form of Confession, by which they accuse themselves of all their Sins to God, to the whole Court of Heaven, and to God's Ministers; and crave Mercy of God, and the Prayers and Intercession of both the *triumphant* and *militant* Church. After which,
the

the Priest, turning towards the Communicants, says,

May the Almighty God have Mercy on you, and forgive you your Sins, and bring you to everlasting Life. Amen.

May the Almighty and Merciful Lord grant you Pardon, Absolution and Remission of all your Sins. Amen.

Then the Priest taking the Particles of the blessed Sacrament, which are designed for the Communicants, and holding one of them, which he elevates a little, over the Pix or Paten, pronounces the following Words: *Ecce Agnus Dei, &c.* that is, *Behold the Lamb of God: Behold he who taketh away the Sins of the World.* Then he repeats three times, *Domine, non sum dignus, &c.* that is, *Lord, I am not worthy that thou shouldst enter under my Roof: Speak but only the Word, and my Soul shall be healed.* After which he distributes the Holy Communion, making the Sign of the Cross with the consecrated Particle upon each one, and saying to each one, *The Body of our Lord Jesus Christ preserve thy Soul to Life everlasting. Amen.*

2. In what Manner is the blessed Sacrament administer'd to the Sick?

A. The Catholick Church has always practised the Reserving some consecrated Particle of the blessed Eucharist for communicating the Sick; and where she enjoys free Exercise of Religion, takes care that this blessed Sacrament be carried to them with a Religious Solemnity, attended with Lights, &c. When the Priest comes into the Chamber where the sick Person lies, he says, *Peace be to this House.* Answ. *And to all that dwell therein.* Then setting down the Pix with the blessed Sacrament upon the Table, which must be covered with a clean Linnen Cloth, he takes Holy Water, and sprinkles the sick Person and the Chamber, saying, *Asperges, &c.*
Thou

Thou shalt sprinkle me, O Lord, with hyssop, and I shall be cleansed: Thou shalt wash me, and I shall be made whiter than snow. Psal. 1. Have mercy on me, O God, according to thy great mercy. Glory be to the Father, &c. Then he again repeats the Anthem, Thou shalt sprinkle me, &c. After which he adds, Our Help is in the Name of the Lord. Answ. Who made Heaven and Earth. Priest. O Lord, hear my Prayer. Answ. And let my Cry come to thee. Priest. The Lord be with you. Answ. And with thy Spirit. Priest. Let us pray.

The Prayer.

O Holy Lord, Almighty Father, Everlasting God, graciously hear us; and vouchsafe to send thy holy Angel from Heaven, to guard, cherish, protect, visit, and defend all that dwell in this Habitation, Thro' Christ our Lord. Amen.

Then the Priest coming to the sick Person, endeavours to dispose him and to prepare him for receiving the blessed Sacrament; and, if he has any Sin upon his Conscience, hears his Confession, and absolves him. After which, the sick Person, or some other in his Name, says the *Confiteor*; and the Priest says, *May the Almighty God have Mercy on thee, &c. as above. Behold the Lamb of God, &c. Lord, I am not worthy, &c.* And in giving the blessed Sacrament, if it be by way of *Viaticum*, or Preparation for Death, he says, *Receive Brother, [or Sister] the Viaticum of the Body of our Lord Jesus Christ, who may guard thee from the wicked Enemy, and bring thee to everlasting Life. Amen.* But if the sick Person be not in Danger of Death, the Priest, in giving the blessed Sacrament, pronounces the usual Form; *May the Body of our Lord Jesus Christ preserve thy Soul to Life everlasting. Amen.*

After

After which the Priest says the following Prayer :

O Holy Lord, Almighty Father, Eternal God, we beseech thee with Faith, that the sacred Body of our Lord Jesus Christ thy Son may be available to this our Brother [or Sister] that has received it, as a Medicine to Eternity, both for Body and Soul; thro' the same Lord Jesus Christ thy Son, who liveth and reigneth with thee in the Unity of the Holy Ghost, for ever and ever. Amen.

Then, if there remain in the Pix any other Particles of the blessed Sacrament, the Priest gives the Benediction therewith to the sick Person: Otherwise he pronounces the usual Blessing, making the Sign of the Cross, and saying, *May the Blessing of the Almighty God, Father, Son and Holy Ghost descend upon thee, and remain always with thee.* Amen.

Q. In what Disposition of Soul is a Person obliged to be, in order to receive worthily the blessed Sacrament?

A. He is obliged to be in the State of Grace, and free at least from the Guilt of mortal Sin; that is to say, from the Guilt of any wilful Transgression in any Matter of Weight, of the Commandments of God, or his Church. The Reason of this is because a Soul that is under the Guilt of mortal Sin is an Enemy to God, and a Slave of the Devil; and therefore it would be a greivous Crime for a Soul in that State to presume to receive the Body and Blood of Christ, which, according to the Doctrine of St. Paul, 1 Cor. xi. 29. would be receiving Damnation to herself.

Q. What then is a Person to do in order to prevent so great an Evil?

A. St. Paul tells you, 1 Cor. xi. 28. that he is to try himself; that is, to search and examine diligently his own Conscience before he ventures to approach to this blessed Sacrament.

Q. And

Q. And what if upon Examination he finds his Conscience charged with any weighty Matter ?

A. He must take care to discharge it, in the Manner that *Christ* has appointed, viz. by a hearty Repentance and sincere Confession ; laying open the State of his Soul to those sacred Judges to whom *Christ* said, St. *John* xx. 23. *Whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven ; and whose sins you shall retain, they are retained.*

Q. What else is required of a Person that is to receive the Blessed Sacrament ?

A. He must be fasting, at least from Midnight ; for so the Church commands, agreeably to a most ancient and apostolical Tradition. So that, if through Inadvertence a Person has taken any Thing, tho' it were no more than one Drop or Crumb, after 12 o' Clock at Night, he must by no Means receive that Day ; it would be a Crime to attempt it.

Q. Is there no Exception from this Rule ?

A. Yes, the Case of Danger of approaching Death is excepted ; for then Persons are permitted to receive the Blessed Sacrament by Way of *Viaticum*, tho' they are not fasting ?

Q. What Kind of Devotion do you recommend to a Christian that is preparing himself for the Holy Communion ?

A. Besides the clearing his Conscience from Sin by a good Confession, I recommend to him, 1st, To think well on the great Work he has in Hand, to consider attentively who he is, and who it is that he is preparing to receive, and earnestly to beg of God to make him worthy. 2^{dly}, To propose to himself a pure Intention, viz. the Honour of God, and the Health of his own Soul ; and in particular, that by worthily receiving *Christ* he may come to a happy Union with him, according to that of St. *John* vi. 56. *He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him.* 3^{dly}, To meditate,

meditate on the Sufferings and Death of his Redeemer, in Compliance with that Command of our Lord, St Luke xxii. 19. *Do this in remembrance of me.* 4thly, To prepare himself by Acts of Virtue, more especially *Faith, Love and Humility*; that so he may approach to his Lord with a firm *Belief* of his real Presence in this Sacrament, and of his Death and Passion; with an ardent Affection of *Love* to him who has so much loved us, and with a great Sentiment of his own Unworthiness and Sins, joined with a firm Confidence in the Mercies of his Redeemer.

2. What ought to be a Christian's Behaviour at the Time of receiving this blessed Sacrament?

A. As to the *Interior*, he ought to have his Soul at that Time full of the Sentiments we have just now mention'd of *Faith, Love and Humility*. And as to the *Exterior*, he ought to have his Head erect, his Eyes modestly cast down, his Mouth moderately open, and his Tongue a little advanced on his Under-lip, that so the Priest may conveniently put the sacred Host upon his Tongue, which he must gently convey into his Mouth, and after having moisten'd it for a Moment or two on his Tongue, swallow it as soon as he can. In all which he is carefully to avoid, 1st. The putting his Mouth to the Towel. 2^{dly}, The chewing with his Teeth, or raising the Host to the Roof of his Mouth. 3^{dly}, The letting the sacred Particle quite dissolve in his Mouth. 4^{thly}, The spitting soon after Communion. But if the Particle should happen to stick to the Roof of his Mouth, let him not be disturbed, nor put his Finger in his Mouth to remove it; but gently remove it with his Tongue as soon as he can, and so convey it down.

2. What Devotion do you recommend after Communion?

A. 1st,

A. 1st. Adoration, Praise and Thanksgiving, in order to welcome our dear Saviour upon his coming under our Roof. Here then let the Soul cast herself at the Feet of her, Lord; let her like *Magdalen*, wash them in Spirit with her Tears; or, if she dares presume so high, let her embrace him with the Spouse in the *Canticles*, and say, *I have found him whom my soul loves; I will hold him, and will not let him go.* Let her, like the Royal Prophet, invite all Heaven and Earth to join with her in praising her Lord; and let her excite all her Powers to welcome him. *2dly*, I recommend to the devout Communicant to make a Present or *Offering* to *Christ*, in return for his having given himself. The Present that he expects is our Heart and Soul, which, with all its Faculties, ought on this Occasion to be offered and consecrated to our Lord. *3dly*, At this Time the Soul ought to lay all her Necessities before her Redeemer, and not neglect so favourable a Conjuncture of suing for his Mercy and Grace, both for herself and the whole World; for those more especially whom she is in particular obliged to pray for: And above all Things let her pray, that nothing in Life or Death may ever separate her from the Love of him whom she has here received, and chosen for her Lord and Spouse for ever. -

Q. What do you think of those that spend little or no Time in Recollection and Devotion after Communion?

A. I think they put an Affront upon *Christ* in so quickly turning their Backs upon him; and that they wrong their own Souls, which by this Neglect are robbed of those Graces and Comforts which they would have received if they had staid in his Company.

Q. Have you any thing more to recommend after Communion?

A. I

A. I have this to recommend with regard to the whole following Day, that a Person take Care to be more than ordinarily recollected, and very much upon his Guard against the Snares of the Enemy, who is never more busy than upon this Occasion to fling some Temptation or Provocation into a Christian's Way, by which he may disturb the Soul, and rob her of the Treasure which she has received; and therefore it behoves Christians to be cautious against this wicked Enemy and all his Stratagems, lest by putting us into a Passion, or otherwise drawing us into Sin, he quickly drive *Christ* out of our Souls.

If you desire to be more perfectly instructed in what relates to this Blessed Sacrament, and the Devotion that is proper before and after Communion, I refer you to Father *Lewis de Granada's Memorial of a Christian Life*, Book III. Dr. *Gobinet's* second Volume of the *Instruction of Youth*; or Mr. *Gother's* little Book of *Instructions and Devotions for Confession and Communion*.

Q. Are all Christians that are come to the Years of Discretion under an Obligation of receiving this Sacrament?

A. They certainly are; 1st, By a divine Precept or Commandment of *Christ*, St. *John* vi. 54. *Except you eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, you shall have no life in you.* Which Precept obliges to the receiving sometimes at least in our Life, and at our Death. 2^{dly}, By a Precept or Commandment of the Church, publish'd in the great Council of *Lateran*, Anno 1215; by which all the Faithful are obliged to receive at least once a Year, and that within the *Easter-time* (which begins on *Palm-sunday* and lasts till *Low-sunday*) except the Person, by the Advice of his Pastor, should, for some just Reason, be permitted to put off his Communion till another Time.

E

Q. What

Q. What is the Penalty imposed by this Council on such as neglect their *Easter* Communion?

A. The Council orders, that such Offenders should be excluded the Church, and, if they die in this Transgression, be deprived of Christian Burial.

Q. Are Persons then actually excommunicated that neglect their *Easter* Communion?

A. No, they are not, till Superiors pronounce the Sentence of Excommunication against them; because the Council does not actually inflict this Penalty, but only orders or authorizes the inflicting of it.

Q. If a Person has pass'd by the Time of *Easter*, or was hinder'd from communicating at that Time, is he obliged to communicate afterwards, as soon as he can?

A. Yes, he is; at least if you speak of one that has been a whole Year without communicating; for the Church-Precept obliges to the receiving at least once a Year. For the same Reason, a Person that has not been at Communion within the Year, and foresees that he shall be hinder'd at *Easter*, ought to anticipate his paschal Communion by receiving beforehand.

Q. And what if a Person has made a sacrilegious Communion at *Easter*, has such a one satisfied the Precept of the Church?

A. No, certainly. [See the 55th Proposition condemned by *Innocent XI.*] And therefore such a one remains obliged to Communion, in the same Manner as if he had not communicated at all.

Q. At what Age are Christians obliged by the Precept of the Church to communicate?

A. As soon as they come to the Years of Discretion, as it is express'd in the Council of *Lateran*; that is, when they have that perfect Use of Reason, and are so well instructed in their Duty as to be able to discern the Body of the Lord, and to receive
it

it with due Reverence and Devotion. Now this happens in some earlier, in others later ; but seldom earlier than about ten Years of Age.

2. But what if a Child, that is between seven and ten Years of Age, should be in evident Danger of Death?

A. Many Divines are of Opinion, if such a one be come to the Use of Reason (which is commonly presumed after seven Years of Age) that he may, or even ought to receive, because of the Command of *Christ*, *St. John* vi. 54. So *Suares*, *Navarrus*, &c.

2. What are the Effects of this Blessed Sacrament in the worthy Receivers?

A. It is the Food, Nourishment, Strength and Life of the Soul, by supplying it with sanctifying Grace, by repairing its Forces, by arming it against its Passions and Concupiscences, by maintaining it at present in the Life of Grace, and bringing it to Life and Glory everlasting; according to that of *St. John* vi. 51. *The bread that I will give is my flesh, for the life of the world;* and ver. 58. *He that eateth of this bread shall live for ever.*

S E C T. VIII.

Of the Worship of Christ in this Sacrament: Where also of Benediction and Processions.

2. **W**HAT Kind of Honour is due to this Blessed Sacrament?

A. Divine Honour and Adoration, inasmuch as it contains truly and really the Divine Person of *Jesus Christ*, the Son of God; who, as he is truly God, ought most certainly to be adored, wheresoever he is.

2. Is there no Danger of Idolatry in this Practice?

A. No certainly ; because this Honour is not paid to the outward Veil, or the Sacramental Signs, but to *Jesus Christ*, who lies hidden there : Now *Jesus Christ* is no Idol, but the true and living God.

2. But if the Doctrine of the real Presence and Transubstantiation should not be true, should we not then at least be guilty of Idolatry ?

A. We are as positively certain, by divine Faith, of the Truth of the Doctrine of the real Presence and of Transubstantiation, as Protestants can be of the Divinity of *Jesus Christ* ; and therefore we are as much out of the Reach of the Danger of Idolatry, in worshipping *Christ* in the Sacrament, as they are in worshipping him in Heaven. I shall add, for their further Satisfaction, that some of their best Divines have discharged us from all Danger of Idolatry in worshipping *Christ* in this Sacrament ; as they may find in *Dr. Jeremy Taylor's Liberty of Prophecy*, Sect. 20. Num. 26. and *Mr. Thorndike's Just Weights and Measures*, ch. 19. p. 125. *Dr. Taylor's* Words on this Subject deserve to be remark'd. He writes as follows : “ Idolatry is a forsaking the true God, and giving divine Worship to a Creature, or to an Idol ; that is, to an imaginary God.—Now it is evident, that the Object of their [the Catholics] Adoration, in the Blessed Sacrament, is the only true and eternal God, hypostically joined with his holy Humanity, which Humanity they believe actually present under the Veil of the Sacramental Signs. And if they thought him not present, they are so far from worshipping the Bread in this Case, that themselves profess it Idolatry to do so. Which is a Demonstration, that their Soul has nothing in it that is idolatrical ; the Will has nothing in it but what is a great Enemy to Idolatry ; and
“ nothing

“ nothing burns in Hell but proper Will.” So far this learned Protestant Prelate.

Q. Why does the Catholick Church reserve the Blessed Sacrament in her Churches ?

A. She reserves the Blessed Sacrament in Tabernacles upon her Altars, partly that she may have it there to carry to the Sick at all Hours, whenever they shall be in Need of it ; and partly for the Comfort of her Children, who by this Means have *Jesus Christ* always amongst them, and may come when they please to visit him. This Custom of reserving the Blessed Sacrament is as ancient as Christianity, as appears from the most * certain Monuments of Antiquity. And 'tis upon Account of the Blessed Sacrament reserved in the Tabernacle, that a Lamp hangs before the Altar to burn there Day and Night, and that we kneel as often as we pass before the Tabernacle.

Q. Why is the Blessed Sacrament, upon certain Days, exposed to the View of the People, in a *Re-monstrance* set up upon the Altar ?

A. 'Tis to invite the People to come there to adore *Jesus Christ*, and to excite in them a greater Devotion by the Sight of their Lord, veiled in these sacred Mysteries.

Q. What is the Meaning of the *Benediction* given on certain Days ?

A. 'Tis a Devotion practised by the Church, in order to give Adoration, Praise and *Blessing* to God, for his infinite Goodness and Love testified to us in the Institution of this Blessed Sacrament, and to receive at the same Time the *Benediction* or *Blessing* of our Lord here present.

Q. Why is the Blessed Sacrament sometimes carried in solemn Procession through the Streets ?

* *Tertullian, L. 2. ad Uxorem, C. 5. St. Cyprian, L. de Lapsis, &c.*

A. To honour our Lord there present with a Kind of *Triumph*, and thereby to make him some Sort of Amends for the Injuries and Affronts which are so frequently offer'd to this divine Sacrament ; and to obtain his Blessing for all those Places through which he passes.

C H A P. VI.

Of the Sacrifice of the Mass.

2. **W**HAT do you mean by the *Mass* ?

A. The *Mass* is the Liturgy of the Catholick Church, and consists in the Consecration of the Bread and Wine into the Body and Blood of *Christ*, and the offering up of this same Body and Blood to God by the Ministry of the Priest for a perpetual Memorial of *Christ's* Sacrifice upon the Cross, and a Continuation of the same till the End of the World.

2. Why is this Liturgy called the *Mass*?

A. Some think this Word is derived from the Hebrew Word *Missach*, Deut. xvi. which signifies a *voluntary Offering* ; others are of Opinion, that it is derived from the *Missa* or *Missio*, that is, from the *Dismission* of the Catechumens and others, who were not permitted anciently to be present at this Sacrifice. But be this as it will, the Name is of very ancient Use in the Church, as appears from St. *Ambrose*, L. 2. *Epist.* 14. *ad Sororem* ; St. *Leo*, *Epist.* 81. *ad Dioscorum* ; and St. *Gregory*, *Hom.* 6. in *Evangelia*.

2. Is the *Mass* properly a Sacrifice ?

A. Yes, it is.

2. What do you mean by a Sacrifice ?

A. A Sacrifice, properly so called, is an Oblation or Offering of some sensible Thing made to God by a law-

a lawful Minister, to acknowledge, by the Destruction or other Change in the Thing offer'd, the sovereign Power of God, and to render him the Homage due to his supreme Majesty.

Q. How then is the *Mass* a Sacrifice.

A. Because 'tis an Oblation of the Body and Blood of *Jesus Christ*, offer'd under the outward and sensible Signs of Bread and Wine, to God, by the Ministry of the Priests of the Church, lawfully consecrated and empower'd by *Christ*; and this Oblation is accompanied with a real *Change* and *Destruction* of the Bread and Wine, by the Consecration of them, into the Body and Blood of *Christ*, and a real exhibiting of *Christ* our Victim, heretofore immolated upon the Cross, and here mystically dying in the separate Consecration of the two different *Species*; and this Oblation is made to God to acknowledge his sovereign Power, to render him our Homage, and for all the other Ends for which Sacrifice is offer'd to his divine Majesty.

Q. What are the Ends for which Sacrifice of old was offer'd, and is still to be offer'd to God;

A. For these four Ends; 1st, For God's own Honour and Glory, by acknowledging his Sovereignty, and paying him our Homage; 2^{dly}, To give God Thanks for all his Blessings; 3^{dly}, To beg Pardon for our Sins; 4^{thly}, To obtain Grace and all Blessings from his divine Majesty.

Q. Have the Servants of God, from the Beginning of the World, been always accustomed to honour him with their Sacrifices?

A. Yes, they have. Witness the Sacrifice of *Abel*, *Gen. iv.* the Sacrifice of *Noah*, *Gen. viii.* the Sacrifice of *Melchisedech*, *Gen. xiv.* the Sacrifices of *Abraham*, *Gen. xv.* and *xxii.* the Sacrifices of *Job*, *ch. i.* and *xlii.* and the many different Kinds of Sacrifices prescribed in the Law of *Moses*. Of these ancient Sacrifices some were *Holocausts*, or whole

Burnt-offerings, in which the Victim or Host was wholly consumed by Fire, and thereby given fully to God, without Reserve, for the more perfect Acknowledgment of his Sovereignty. Others were *Sin-offerings*, or Sacrifices offer'd for Sin: Others were *Pacific*, or *Peace-offerings*; and these were either offer'd in *Thanksgiving* for Blessings received, or for obtaining of Graces and Favours from the Divine Majesty. Again, some were *bloody* Sacrifices, in which the Victim was slain; others *unbloody*, as the Sacrifice of *Melchisedech*, which was Bread and Wine, *Gen. xiv.* the Sacrifices of fine Flour with Oil and Frankincense, of unleavened Cakes, &c. prescribed *Levit. ii.* of the *Scape-goat*, *Levit. xvi.* &c.

Q. Were these Sacrifices of the Law of Nature and of the Law of *Moses* agreeable to the Divine Majesty?

A. They were, as often as they were accompanied with the inward Sacrifice of the Heart; not for any Virtue or Efficacy that they had in themselves, as being but *weak and needy Elements*, but in View of the Sacrifice of *Christ*, of which they all were Types and Figures, and in Consideration of the Faith of those that offered them, by which they believed in a *Redeemer* to come, whose Blood alone was capable to reconcile them to God.

Q. Why are all these Sacrifices now abolish'd?

A. Because they were but Figures of the Sacrifice of *Christ*; and therefore were to give Place to his Sacrifice, as Figures to the Truth.

Q. How do you prove that these ancient Sacrifices had no Power nor Efficacy of themselves, and were to make Way for another Sacrifice, viz. that of *Christ*?

A. This is evident from many Texts of Scripture; I shall only alledge one at present, viz. *Psal. xxxix.* spoken in the Person of *Christ* to his Father:

ther: *Sacrifice and oblation thou didst not desire; but thou hast pierced ears for me, (or as St. Paul reads it, Heb. x. 5. A body thou hast fitted for me) burnt-offering and sin-offering thou didst not require, then said I, behold I come.*

Q. What is then the Sacrifice of Christians under the New Law?

A. We have no other Sacrifice but that of *Christ*, which he once offer'd upon the Cross; and daily offers by the Ministry of his Priests upon the Altar in the Eucharist.

Q. Is the Sacrifice of the Cross and that of the Eucharist the same Sacrifice, or two distinct Sacrifices?

A. It is the same Sacrifice; because the *Victim* is the self-same, viz. *Jesus Christ*; and the *Priest* or principal Offerer is also the self-same *Jesus Christ*: It was he that offer'd himself upon the Cross: It is he that offers himself upon the Altar. The only Difference is the *Manner* of the Offering; because in the Sacrifice of the Cross *Christ* really died, and therefore that was a *bloody Sacrifice*; in the Sacrifice of the Altar, he only dies mystically, and therefore this is an *unbloody Sacrifice*. I say he dies mystically, inasmuch as his Death is represented in the Consecrating apart the Bread and Wine, to denote the shedding of his sacred Blood from his Body at the Time of his Death.

Q. Why do you say that *Jesus Christ* is the Priest that offers the Sacrifice of the Altar, since there is always another Priest to perform this Office?

A. Because the Priest that officiates in the Mass officiates as *Christ's* Vicegerent, and in his Person; and therefore when he comes to the Consecration of the Elements, in which this Sacrifice essentially consists, he speaks not in his own Name, but in the Name and Person of *Christ*, saying, *This is MY Body, This is the Chalice of MY Blood, &c.*

82 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

So that *Christ* himself is the principal Priest; the Officiant only acts by his Authority, in his Name and Person.

Q. But what Need was there of the Sacrifice of the Altar, since we were fully redeemed by the Sacrifice of the Cross?

A. 1st, That we might have in the Sacrifice of the Altar a standing Memorial of the Death of *Christ*. 2^{dly}, That by the Sacrifice of the Altar the Fruit of his Death might daily be applied to our Souls. 3^{dly}, That his Children might have 'till the End of the World an external Sacrifice, in which they might join together in the outward Worship of Religion; as the Servants of God from the Beginning of the World had always done. 4^{thly}, That in and by this Sacrifice they might unite themselves daily with their High-Priest and Victim *Christ Jesus*; and daily answer the four Ends of Sacrifice.

Q. What Proofs have you that the *Mafs* is properly a Sacrifice?

A. Because, as we learn from many plain Texts of Scripture quoted in the foregoing Chapter, and from the perpetual Tradition of the universal Church, in the Consecration of the holy Eucharist, the Bread and Wine are really changed into the Body and Blood of *Christ*; and consequently in and by this Consecration, the real Body and Blood of *Christ*, our Victim, which for us was immolated upon the Cross, is in the *Mafs* exhibited and presented to God. Therefore the *Mafs* is properly a Sacrifice, and the same Sacrifice as that which *Christ* offer'd upon the Cross. And that this Sacrifice is *propitiatory* for the obtaining of the Remission of our Sins, we learn from the very Words of *Christ* our Lord, at the first Institution of it, at his last Supper, when in the Consecration of the Elements, speaking in the present Tense, he tells us (as his Words

Words are in the original Greek) *This is my Body which is broken, or sacrificed for you*, 1 Cor. xi. 24. *This is my Blood of the New Testament which is shed for many for the remission of sins*, Matt. xxvi. 28. St. Mark xiv. 24. or, *This cup is the New Testament in my blood, which (Cup) is shed for you*, viz. for the Remission of your Sins, St. Luke xxii. 19, 20.

Q. Have you any other Texts of Scripture for the Sacrifice of the *Mafs*?

A. Yes, besides many Figures of this Sacrifice in the *Old Testament* (of which the most evident is that of the *Bread and Wine* offer'd by *Melchisedech* the Priest of the most high God, Gen. xiv. According to whose Order Christ is said to be a Priest for ever, Psal. cx. and that as the Holy Fathers * take Notice, by reason of this Sacrifice of the Eucharist) we have the Prophecy of *Malachi*, Chap. i. 10, 11. where God, rejecting the *Jewish* Sacrifices, declares his Acceptance of the Sacrifice or *Pure Offering* which should be made to him in every Place among the *Gentiles*; which Text the ancient Fathers, both *Greek* and *Latin*, urge to shew that the Eucharist is a Sacrifice. See St. *Justin* in *Dialog. cum Tryphone*, St. *Irenæus*, L. 4. c. 32. St. *Chrysostome* in Psal. 92. St. *Augustin*, L. 18. de *civitate Dei*. c. 35, &c.

In the *New Testament* we have, Heb. xiii. 10. where the Apostle tells us, that under the new Law we have an *Altar*, (and consequently a Sacrifice) whereof they have no Right to eat who serve the *Tabernacle*. That is, they who continue in the Service of the old Law. And, 1 Cor. x. from ver. 14, to 21, the same Apostle makes a Parallel between the Partakers of the Christian Sacrifice, and

* St. Cyprian, *Epist.* 63. St. Chrysostome, *Hom.* 35. in Gen. St. Epiphanius, *Her.* 25. St. Jerome, *Epist.* 126. ad Evag. St. Augustin, *Cons.* 1. in Ps. 33. L. 15. de *Civ. Dei*, c. 22. L. 18. c. 35. &c. St. Cyril Alex. L. 2. *Glaphyr*, Theodoret, Qu. 64. in Gen.

84 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

those that partake of the *Jewish* or *Heathenish* Victims, so as evidently to suppose, that the Christian Table, which he mentions, ver. 21. is an Altar, where *Christ* is mystically immolated, and afterwards eaten by the Faithful, as in the *Jewish* and *Heathenish* Sacrifices the Victim was first offer'd on the Altar, and then eaten by the People. From whence the Apostle infers, that they who were Partakers of this great Sacrifice of the Body and Blood of *Christ*, ver. 16, ought not to be Partakers with Devils, by eating of the Meats sacrificed to Idols, ver. 21. The Sacrifice of the Mass is also mentioned in the 13th Chapter of the *Acts* of the Apostles, ver. 2, where what we read in the Protestant Testament, *As they minister'd to the Lord and fasted, &c.* in the Greek Original is, *as they were sacrificing* λειτουργούντων *to the Lord, and fasting, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them.* Where the Word which we have rendered in *English* *Sacrificing*, is the self-same which to this Day is used by the *Greeks* to express the Sacrifice of the Mass.

Besides these Arguments from Scripture for the Sacrifice offer'd to God in the Blessed Eucharist, we have the Authority and the perpetual Tradition of the Church of God, from the Days of the Apostles. Witness the most ancient Liturgies of all Churches and Nations, *Latins, Greeks, Goths, Syrians, Armenians, Egyptians, Ethiopians, Indians, &c.* Witness the manifold Testimonies of Councils and Fathers of all Ages; witness the frequent Use in all Christian Antiquity of the Names of *Altar, Sacrifice, Oblation, Priest, &c.* witness, in fine, the universal Consent of Christians of all Denominations before *Luther's* Time, in offering up the Eucharist as a Sacrifice; which is a Matter of Fact that cannot be contested. To which if we add another Truth no less notorious, *viz.* that no one of our

our Adversaries can pretend to assign the Time in which the Use of this Sacrifice first begun, we cannot have a more certain Proof of an Apostolical Tradition. It is the Rule which St. *Augustin* gives to discern Apostolical Traditions by, *L. 4. de Bapt. c. 24.*

Q. But does not St. *Paul* say, *Heb. x. 14.* that *Christ*, by one offering, viz. that of the Cross, hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified. What Room then can there be for the Sacrifice of the Mass?

A. What the Apostle says is certainly true, that the Sacrifice of *Christ* upon the Cross is that one offering by which we are perfected for ever, because the whole World was redeem'd by that one Sacrifice, and all other Means of our Sanctification or Salvation have their Force and Efficacy from that one offering. Yet as that one offering, by which *Christ* hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified, is no Way injured by his Supplications, which as Man he makes for us to his Father in Heaven; where, as the same Apostle tells us, *Heb. vii. 25.* He ever liveth to make intercession for us; so neither is it any ways injur'd, but highly honour'd, by the representing of the same Offering to God in the Sacrifice of the Altar.

Q. But the Apostle tells us, *Heb. ix. 25.* that *Christ* does not offer himself often: What say you to this?

A. He speaks there of his offering himself in a bloody Manner, by dying for the Redemption of the World; which was to be but once. But tho' the Price of our Redemption was to be pay'd but once, yet the Fruit of it was to be daily applied to our Souls, by those Means of Grace which *Christ* has left in his Church, that is, by his Sacraments and Sacrifice.

C H A P. VII.

Of hearing Mass: Where also of the Order and Ceremonies of the Mass, and the Devotion proper for that Time.

Q. ARE the Faithful obliged to be present at the Sacrifice of the Mass?

A. They are obliged, by a Precept of the Church, to be present thereat, upon all *Sundays* and *Holidays*.

Q. Why does the Church oblige all her Children to assist at the Sacrifice of the Mass upon all *Sundays* and *Holidays*?

A. That as *Sundays* and *Holidays* are particularly set apart for the Worship of God, and the Sanctification of their Souls, they may answer these Ends by assembling together, on these Days, to commemorate the Death of *Christ*, and to offer to God this most solemn Worship of Sacrifice, by the Hands of the Priest, and of their High Priest *Christ Jesus*; 1st, In Testimony of God's Sovereignty, and as a Homage due to his Divine Majesty; 2^{dly}, To give Thanks for all his Blessings general and particular; 3^{dly}, To beg Mercy and Pardon for all their Sins; 4^{thly}, To obtain all necessary Graces, from the Fountain of all Grace.

Q. Why might not this as well be done without going to hear Mass?

A. Because, as we have seen in the foregoing Chapter, the Mass is a Sacrifice instituted by *Christ* to be offered for all those Ends. And as in this Sacrifice *Christ* himself is both the Priest and the Victim, who here presents to his eternal Father that same Body and Blood by which we were redeemed; it must be evident, that there can be no better Means of adoring God, and offering our Homage to him, than by uniting ourselves to this Sacrifice of his only Son; no more acceptable Thanksgiving, than that

that which is here offer'd by and thro' *Jesus Christ*; no Means of obtaining Mercy and Pardon, comparable to this Oblation of the Blood of the Lamb; in fine, no more seasonable Time for obtaining the Favours of Heaven, than when we appear before the Throne of Grace with him and thro' him, in whom his Father is always *well-pleased*.

Q. In what Disposition of Soul ought Persons then to go to hear Mass?

A. They ought to go as if they were going to *Mount Calvary*, to be present at the Passion and Death of their Redeemer; since the Mass is indeed the same Sacrifice as that which he there offered. And consequently there can be no better Devotion for the Time of Mass, than that which has relation to the Passion of *Christ*, which is therein commemorated and represented to the eternal Father. And all the Faithful, when they are at Mass, should endeavour to put their Souls in the like Dispositions of *Adoration, Thanksgiving, Love, and Repentance for their Sins*, with which a good Christian would have assisted at the Sacrifice of the Cross, had he been present there.

Q. What think you of those, who, during the Time of Mass, instead of attending to this great Sacrifice, suffer themselves to be carried away with *wilful Distractions*?

A. Such as these don't hear Mass, that is, they don't fulfill the Church Precept, nor satisfy the Obligation of the Day, but rather mock God, whilst outwardly they pretend to honour him, and their Heart is far from him.

Q. What then do you say to those, who, during the Time of the Mass, are laughing and talking; or pass that Time in criminal Amusements?

A. These not only are guilty, like the former, of breaking the Church Precept; but also must answer for the Scandal that they give by their ill Example,

Example, and for their hindering others from attending to their Duty; as well as for their profaning these most sacred Mysteries by such an unchristian Behaviour at this holy Time.

Q. I should be glad if you would explain to me the Order and Ceremonies of the Mass: And first, pray what is the Meaning of the Priest's Vestments?

A. The Priest in saying Mass represents the Person of *Christ*, who is the High-Priest of the new Law; and the Mass itself represents his Passion; and therefore the Priest puts on these Vestments to represent those with which *Christ* was ignominiously cloathed at the Time of his Passion. Thus for Instance, the *Amice* represents the Rag or Clout, with which the *Jews* muffled our Saviour's Face, when at every Blow they bid him prophesy who it was that struck him, St. *Luke* xxii. 64. the *Alb* represents the white Garment with which he was vested by *Herod*; the *Girdle*, *Maniple* and *Stole* represent the Cords and Bands with which he was bound in the different Stages of his Passion; the *Chasuble*, or outward Vestment, represents the Purple Garment with which he was cloathed as a mock King; upon the Back of which there is a Cross, to represent that which *Christ* bore on his sacred Shoulder's; Lastly, The Priest's *Tonsure* or *Crown* is to represent the Crown of Thorns which our Saviour wore. Moreover, as in the old Law, the Priests that were to officiate in sacred Functions had, by the Appointment of God, *Vestments* assigned for that Purpose, as well for the great Decency and Solemnity of the divine Worship, as to signify and represent the Virtues which God required of his Ministers, so it was proper, that in the Church of the New Testament *Christ's* Ministers should, in their sacred Functions, be distinguished from the Laity by their sacred *Vestments*; which might also represent

represent the Virtues which God requires in them; thus the *Amice*, which is first put upon the Head, represents divine *Hope*, which the Apostle calls the *Helmet of Salvation*; the *Alb*, Innocence of Life; the *Girdle* (with which the Loins are begirt) *Purity* and *Chastity*; the *Maniple* (which is put on the left Arm) *Patient-suffering*, the Labours of this mortal Life; the *Stole*, the sweet Yoke of *Christ*, to be borne in this Life, in order to a happy Immortality in the next; in fine, the *Chasuble*, which, as uppermost, covers all the rest, the Virtue of *Charity*.

In these Vestments the Church makes Use of five Colours; the *White*, on the Feasts of our Lord, of the Blessed Virgin, of the Angels, and of the Saints that were not Martyrs; the *Red*, on the Feasts of Pentecost, of the Invention and Exaltation of the Cross, and of the Apostles and Martyrs; the *Green*, on the greatest Part of the *Sundays*; the *Violet*, in the penitential Times of *Advent* and *Lent*, and upon *Vigils* and *Ember-days*; and the *Black*, upon *Good Friday*, and in the Masses for the Dead.

Q. Why is there always a Crucifix upon the Altar at the Time of Mass?

A. That as the Mass is said in Remembrance of *Christ's* Passion and Death, the Priest and People may have always before their Eyes the Image that represents his Passion and Death.

Q. What is the Meaning of having lighted Candles upon the Altar at the Time of Mass?

A. 1st, To honour the Triumph of our King, which is there celebrated, by these Lights, which are Tokens of our Joy, and of his Glory. 2^{dly}, To denote the Light of Faith, with which we are to approach him.

Q. What is the Meaning of making a Reverence to the Altar?

A. 1st,

A. 1st, Because the Altar is a Figure of *Christ*, who is not only our *Sacrifice* and our *High-Priest*, but our *Altar* too, inasmuch as we are to offer our Prayers and Sacrifices thro' him. 2^{dly}, Because the Altar is the Seat of the divine Mysteries, and therefore deserves our Reverence.

2. What is the Meaning of the Use of *Incense*, in the Mass, and other Offices of the Church?

A. Incense is an Emblem of Prayer, ascending to God from a Heart inflamed with his Love, as the Smoke of the Incense ascends on high from the Fire of the Censer. Hence the Royal Prophet, *Psal.* 140, says, *Let my prayer, O Lord, be directed like incense in thy sight.* And St. *John*, in the *Revelation*, Chap. v. 8, and Chap. viii. 4. saw the four and twenty Elders, and the Angel offering up to God *Odours* and *Incense*, which were the Prayers of the Saints. Moreover, the Incensing of the Altar, of the Priest, &c. is, according to the Use of the Church, a Token of Honour to the Thing that is *incensed*; not of divine Honour, since we also incense the whole Choir and the People, but of a due Respect for the Things of God, for his Ministers and People.

2. What is the Use of Singing and of Organs in the divine Service?

A. To help to raise the Heart to Heaven, and to celebrate with greater Solemnity the divine Praises.

2. Tell me now, if you please, the different Parts of the Mass, and the Ceremonies thereof, that I may be the better instructed in this heavenly Sacrifice.

A. 1st, The Priest, standing at the Foot of the Altar, having made a low Reverence, begins with the Sign of the Cross, saying, *In Nomine Patris, &c. In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost*; and then recites alternatively with the Clerk the 42^d Psalm, *Judica me, Deus, &c. Judge me,*

me, O God, &c. composed by *David* in the Time that he was persecuted by *Saul*, and kept at a Distance from the Tabernacle or Temple of God, and expressing his ardent Desires and Hopes of approaching to God's Altar, and offering Praise and Sacrifice to him. And therefore this *Psalms* is most proper here, as expressing the Sentiments of Soul with which we ought to come to this Holy Sacrifice.

2dly, The Priest, bowing down at the Foot of the Altar, says the *Confiteor*, or *General Confession*, acknowledging his Sins to God, to the whole Court of Heaven, and to all the Faithful there assembled, and begging their Prayers to God for him: And the Clerk repeats the same in the Name of the People; to the End that both Priest and People may dispose themselves for this great Sacrifice, by a sincere Repentance for their Sins. Our Adversaries object against this Form of Confession, because therein we confess our Sins to the Saints; as if this was giving them an Honour that belongs to God alone; not considering that the confessing of our Sins to any one, so far from being an Honour peculiar to God, is what we are directed in Scripture to do to one another, St. *James* v. 16. And accordingly, in this very Form, which we call the *Confiteor*, we not only confess our Sins to God, and to his Saints, but the Priest also confesses to the People, and the People to the Priest.

3dly, The Priest, in going up to the Altar, begs for himself and the People, that God would take away their Iniquities, that they may be worthy to enter into his Sanctuary. Then coming up to the Altar, he kisses it, in Reverence to *Christ*, of whom it is a Figure; and going to the Book, he reads what is called the *Introit*, or *Entrance* of the Mass; which is different every Day, and generally an *Antiphon* taken out of the Scripture, with the first Verse of

of one of the *Psalms*, and the *Gloria Patri*, to glorify the blessed Trinity.

4thly, He returns to the Middle of the Altar, and says alternatively with the Clerk the *Kyrie Eleison*, or, *Lord have Mercy on us*; which is said three times to God the Father; three times *Christe Eleison*, or, *Christ have Mercy on us*, to God the Son; and three times again *Kyrie Eleison*, to God the Holy Ghost. This frequent calling for Mercy teaches us the Necessity of approaching to this Sacrifice with a penitential Spirit, and that the best Devotion for this Beginning of the Mass is to offer up to God the Sacrifice of a contrite and humble Heart.

5thly, After the *Kyrie Eleison* the Priest recites the *Gloria in Excelsis*, or, *Glory be to God on High*, &c. being an excellent Hymn and Prayer to God, the Beginning of which was sung by the Angels at the Birth of *Christ*. This being an Hymn of Joy, is omitted in the Masses for the Dead, and in the Penitential Times of *Advent*, *Lent*, &c. After this the Priest, turning about to the People, says, *Dominus vobiscum*, *The Lord be with you*. Answ. *Et cum Spiritu tuo*, *And with thy Spirit*. Then returning to the Book, he says, *Oremus*, *Let us pray*; and then reads the *Collects* or Prayers of that Day, concluding them with the usual Termination, *Per Dominum nostrum*, &c. *Thro' our Lord Jesus Christ*, &c. with which the Church commonly concludes all her Prayers, as hoping for no Mercy, Grace, or Blessing, but thro' our Saviour *Jesus Christ*.

6thly, After the *Collects* is read the *Lesson* or *Epistle* of the Day (and upon the *Wednesdays* and *Saturdays* in the *Ember Weeks* several *Lessons* or *Epistles*) at the End of which the Clerk answers, *Deo gratias*, i. e. *Thanks be to God*; to give God Thanks for the heavenly Instructions contained in that divine Lesson of Holy Writ. The *Lesson* or *Epistle* is followed by the *Gradual* or *Tract*, consisting of some devout
Verses

Verfes taken out of Scripture ; to which are joined the *Alleluia's*, to praise God with Joy, excepting the Penitential Time between *Septuagesima* and *Easter*, for then *Alleluia* is not said.

7thly, After the *Epistle* and *Gradual* the Book is removed to the other Side of the Altar, in order to read the *Gospel* of the Day ; which Removal of the Book represents the passing from the preaching of the Old Law, figured by the *Lesson* or *Epistle*, to the *Gospel* of *Jesus Christ*, publish'd by the Preachers of the New Law. The Priest, before he reads the *Gospel*, makes his Prayer, bowing down before the Middle of the Altar, that God would cleanse his Heart and his Lips, that he may be worthy to declare his *Gospel*. At the Beginning of the *Gospel* both Priest and People make the Sign of the Cross, 1st, upon their Foreheads, to signify that they will not be ashamed of the Cross of *Christ*, and his Doctrine ; 2dly, upon their Mouth. to signify that they will profess it in Words ; 3dly, upon their Breast, to signify that they will always keep it in their Hearts. During the *Gospel* the People stand, to shew by this Posture their Readiness to go and do whatsoever they shall be commanded by their Saviour, in his Divine Word. At the End the Clerk answers, in the Name of the People, *Laus tibi, Christe ; Praise be to thee, O Christ ;* to give Praise to our Redeemer for his heavenly Doctrine : And the Priest kisses the Book, in Reverence to those sacred Words which he has been reading out of it. In the high or solemn Mass the *Gospel* is sung by the Deacon, and lighted Candles are held by the Acolyths on each Side, to denote the Light which *Christ* brought us by his *Gospel*.

8thly, After the *Gospel*, upon all *Sundays*, as also upon the Feasts of our Lord, of the Blessed Virgin, of the Apostles, and of the Doctors of the Church, the Priest, standing at the Middle of the Altar, recites

cites the *Nicene Creed*, and kneels down at these Words, *Et Homo factus est, And he was made Man*, in Reverence to the Mystery of our Lord's Incarnation. Then turning about to the People, he greets them with the usual Salutation, *Dominus vobiscum, The Lord be with you.* Ans. *Et cum Spiritu tuo, And with thy Spirit.* After which he reads a short Sentence of Scripture called the *Offertory*, and then takes off the Veil from the Chalice, in order to proceed to the offering up the Bread and Wine for the Sacrifice.

9thly, He offers first the Bread upon the *Paten*, or little Plate; then pours the Wine into the *Chalice*, mingling with it a little Water, and offers that up in like Manner, begging that this Sacrifice may be accepted of by the Almighty for the Remission of his Sins, for all there present, for all the Faithful living and dead, and for the Salvation of all the World. Then bowing down, he says, *In the Spirit of Humility, and in a contrite Mind, may we be received by thee, O Lord: And so may our Sacrifice be made this Day in thy Sight, that it may please thee, O Lord God.* Then he blesses the Bread and Wine with the Sign of the Cross, invoking the Holy Ghost, saying, *Come thou, the Sanctifier, the Almighty and Eternal God, and bless ✠ this Sacrifice prepared for thy Holy Name.* After this he goes to the Corner of the Altar, and there washes the Tips of his Fingers, saying, *Lavabo, &c. I will wash my Hands among the Innocent, and I will encompass thy Altar, O Lord, &c.* as in the latter Part of the 25th Psalm. This Washing of the Fingers denotes the Cleanness and Purity of Soul with which these divine Mysteries are to be celebrated; which ought to be such, as not only to wash away all greater Filth, but even the Dust which sticks to the Tips of our Fingers, by which are signified the smallest Faults and Imperfections.

10thly, After washing his Fingers, the Priest returns to the Middle of the Altar, and there bowing down, begs of the Blessed Trinity to receive this Oblation in Memory of the Passion, Resurrection and Ascension of our Lord *Jesus Christ*; and for an honourable Commemoration of the Blessed Virgin, and of all the Saints, that they may interceed for us in Heaven, whose Memory we celebrate on Earth. Then turning about to the People, he says, *Orate Fratres*, &c. that is, *Brethren*, pray that my Sacrifice and yours may be made acceptable in the Sight of God, the Father Almighty. The Clerk answers, in the Name of the People, *May the Lord receive this Sacrifice from thy Hands, to the Praise and Glory of his own Name, and for our Benefit, and that of all his Holy Church.*

11thly, Then the Priest says in a low Voice the Prayers called the *Secreta*, which correspond to the *Collects* of the Day, and are different every Day. He concludes, by saying aloud, *Per omnia secula seculorum*, that is, *Word without End.* Answ. *Amen.* Then after the usual Salutation, *The Lord be with you.* Answ. *And with thy Spirit*, he admonishes the People to *Lift up their Hearts to God* [*Sursum Corda*] and to join with him in giving Thanks to our Lord [*Gratias agamus Domino Deo nostro.*] To which the Clerk answers, *Dignum & justum est, It is meet and just.* Then follows the *Preface*, so called because it serves as an Introduction to the *Canon* of the Mass; in which, after solemnly acknowledging ourselves bound in Duty ever to give Thanks to God, thro' his Son *Jesus Christ*, whose Majesty all the Choirs of Angels ever praise and adore, we humbly beg Leave to have our Voices admitted together with theirs in that celestial Hymn, *Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus*, &c. i. e. *Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God of Hosts. The Heavens and the Earth are full of thy Glory. Hosanna in the highest. Blessed is*

he that comes in the Name of the Lord, Hosanna in the highest.

12thly. After the *Preface* follows the *Canon* of the Mass, or the most sacred and solemn Part of this divine Service ; which is read with a low Voice, as well to express the Silence of *Christ* in his Passion, and his hiding at that Time his Glory and his Divinity, as to signify the vast Importance of that common Cause of all Mankind, which the Priest is then representing as it were in secret to the Ear of God, and the Reverence and Awe with which both Priest and People ought to assist at these tremendous Mysteries. The *Canon* begins by the invoking the Father of Mercies, thro' *Jesus Christ* his Son, to accept this Sacrifice for the Holy Catholick Church, for the Pope, for the Bishop, for the King, and for all the Professors of the Catholick and Apostolick Faith, throughout the whole World. Then follows the *Memento*, or Commemoration of the Living, for whom in particular the Priest intends to offer up that Mass, or who have been particularly recommended to his Prayers, &c. To which is subjoin'd a Remembrance of all there present, followed by a solemn Commemoration of the Blessed Virgin, the Apostles and Martyrs, and all the Saints, to honour their Memory, by naming them in the sacred Mysteries, to communicate with them, and to beg of God the Help of their Intercession, thro' *Jesus Christ* our Lord.

Then the Priest spreads his Hands over the Bread and Wine, which are to be consecrated into the Body and Blood of *Christ* (according to the ancient Ceremony prescribed in the *Levitical Law*, *Levit. i. 3, 4, 16.* that the Priest, or Persons who offer'd Sacrifice, should lay their Hands upon the Victim, before it it was immolated) and he begs that God would accept of this Oblation, which he makes in the Name of the whole Church, and that he would grant

grant us Peace in this Life, and eternal Salvation in the next. Then he blesses the Bread and Wine with the Sign of the Cross (a Ceremony frequently repeated in the Mass, in Memory of *Christ's* Passion, of which this Sacrifice is the Memorial; and to give us to understand that all Grace and Sanctity flow from the Cross of *Christ*, that is, from *Christ* crucified) and he prays that God would render this Oblation *blessed, received, approved, reasonable and acceptable*, that it may be made to us the Body and Blood of his most beloved Son our *Lord Jesus Christ*. Then he proceeds to the *Consecration*, first of the Bread into the Body of our Lord, and then of the Wine into his Blood; which Consecration is made by the Words of *Christ* pronounced by the Priest in his Name, and as bearing his Person: And this is the chief Action of the Mass, in which the very Essence of this Sacrifice consists; because, by the separate Consecration of the Bread and Wine, the Body and Blood of *Christ* are really exhibited and presented to God, and *Christ* is mystically immolated.

Immediately after the Consecration follows the *Elevation*, first of the Host, then of the Chalice, in Remembrance of *Christ's* Elevation upon the Cross, and that the People may adore their Lord veiled under these sacred Signs. At the Elevation of the Chalice, the Priest recites those Words of *Christ*, *As often as you shall do these things, you shall do them in remembrance of me*. Then he goes on, making a solemn Commemoration of the Passion, Resurrection and Ascension of *Christ*, and begging of God to accept this Sacrifice, as he was pleased to accept the Oblations of *Abel, Abraham and Melchisedech*; and to command that it may by his holy Angel be presented upon the Altar above, in Presence of his Divine Majesty, for the Benefit of all those that shall partake of these Mysteries here below.

Then the Priest makes the *Memento*, or Remembrance for the Dead; praying for all those that are *gone before us with the Sign of Faith, and rest in the Sleep of Peace*; and in particular for those for whom he desires to offer this Sacrifice, that God would grant them a *Place of Refreshment, Light and Peace*, thro' *Jesus Christ* our Lord. Then raising his Voice at *Nobis quoque peccatoribus, And to us Sinners, &c.* he strikes his Breast, in token of Repentance, like the humble Publican in the Gospel, and begs of God Mercy and Pardon, and to be admitted into some Part and Society with the Holy Apostles and Martyrs, thro' *Christ* our Lord. He goes on, *By whom, O Lord, thou dost always create, sanctify, enliven, bless and give us all these good Things.* Then kneeling down, and taking the sacred Host in his Hand, he makes the Sign of the Cross with it over the Chalice, saying, *Thro' him, and with him, and in him, is to thee, God the Father, in the Unity of the Holy Ghost, all Honour and Glory*; which last Words he pronounces elevating a little the Host and Chalice from the Altar; and then kneels down, saying with a loud Voice, *Per omnia sæcula sæculorum, For ever and ever.* Answ. *Amen.*

13^{thly}, After this follows the *Pater Noster*, or Lord's Prayer, which is pronounced with a loud Voice; and in token of the People's joining in this Prayer, the Clerk in their Name says aloud this last Petition, *Sed libera nos a Malo, But deliver us from Evil.* The Priest answers, *Amen*; and goes on with a low Voice, begging that we may be delivered from all Evils past, present, and to come; and by the Intercession of the Blessed Virgin and of all the Saints, be favoured with Peace in our Days, and secured from Sin and all Disturbances, thro' *Jesus Christ* our Lord. Then he breaks the Host, in Imitation of *Christ's* breaking the Bread before he gave it to his Disciples, and in Remembrance of his Body being broken for us upon

upon the Crofs ; and puts a Particle of it into the Chalice, saying to the People, *The Peace of the Lord be always with you.* Answ. *And with thy Spirit.* This Ceremony of mixing a Particle of the Host with the Species of Wine in the Chalice, represents the re-uniting of *Christ's* Body, Blood and Soul at his Resurrection ; and the Priest's Wish or Prayer for *Peace*, at the Time of this Ceremony, puts us in Mind of that *Pax vobis*, or *Peace be unto you*, which our Lord spake to his Disciples when he first came to them after his Resurrection, St. *John* xx. 19, 21, 26.

14thly, Then follows the *Agnus Dei*, &c. which the Priest pronounces three Times, striking his Breast in Token of Repentance ; the Words are, *Lamb of God, who takest away the Sins of the World, have Mercy on us.* At the the third Time, instead of *have Mercy on us*, he says, *grant us Peace.* After the *Agnus Dei* follow three Prayers, which the Priest says to himself by Way of Preparation for receiving the Blessed Sacrament. After which kneeling down, and then rising, and taking up the Blessed Sacrament, he three Times strikes his Breast, saying, *Domine non sum dignus*, &c. *Lord, I am not worthy that thou shouldst enter under my Roof ; but only thou say the Word, and my Soul shall be healed.* Then receiving the sacred Host, he says, *The Body of our Lord Jesus Christ preserve my Soul to everlasting Life.* Amen. Having paus'd a while, he proceeds to the receiving of the Chalice, using the like Words, *The Blood of our Lord Jesus Christ*, &c. Then follows the Communion of the People, if any are to receive.

15thly, After the Communion, the Priest takes first a little Wine into the Chalice, which is called *the first Ablution*, in order to consummate what remains of the consecrated Species in the Chalice ; and then takes a little Wine and Water, which is called *the second Ablution*, upon his Fingers, over the

Chalice, to the end that no Particle of the Blessed Sacrament may remain sticking to his Fingers, but that all may be washed into the Chalice, and so received. Then wiping the Chalice, and covering it, he goes to the Book, and reads a Versicle of the holy Scripture, called the *Communion*, because it was used to be sung in the high Mass, at the Time that the People communicated. After this, he turns about to the People with the usual Salutation, *Dominus vobiscum*; and then returning to the Book, reads the *Collects* or Prayers called the *Post-communion*: After which he again greets the People with *Dominus vobiscum*; and gives them leave to depart, with *Ite Missa est*, i. e. *Go, the Mass is done*. Here, bowing before the Altar, he makes a short Prayer to the Blessed Trinity; and then gives his Blessing to all there present, in the Name of the same Blessed Trinity, *Benedicat vos, &c. May the Almighty God, Father, Son and Holy Ghost, bless you*. He concludes, by reading at the Corner of the Altar the Beginning of the Gospel according to St. *John*, which the People hear standing; but at these Words, *Verbum caro factum est*, *The Word was made Flesh*, both Priest and People kneel, in Reverence to the Mystery of *Christ's* Incarnation. The Clerk at the End answers, *Deo Gratias, Thanks be to God*. And then the Priest departs from the Altar, reciting to himself the *Benedicite*, or the Canticle of the three Children, inviting all Creatures in Heaven and Earth to bless and praise our Lord.

2. In what Manner ought the People to be employ'd during the Mass?

A. In such Prayers and Devotions as are most suitable to that Holy Sacrifice; which having so close a Relation to the Passion of *Christ*, is then best heard when the Assistants turn the Attention and Affections of their Souls towards the Mysteries of the Passion of our Lord, which are then represented.

2. Is

Q. Is it not a good Way of hearing Mass, to accompany the Priest through every Part of it, so as to accommodate one's Devotion to what he is then about?

A. 'Tis a very good and profitable Way: Not that the very Prayers of the Priest, especially in the *Canon* and *Consecration*, are always proper for the People; but that in every Part of the Mass it is proper that the People should use such Prayers as are adapted to what the Priest is then doing.

Q. What Kind of Prayers and Devotions then do you esteem the best adapted to the several Parts of the Mass?

A. I should recommend, 1st, In the Beginning of the Mass an earnest Application of the Soul to God, by way of begging his divine Grace for the worthily and profitably assisting at this Sacrifice.

2^{dly}, At the *Confiteor*, and what follows, till the *Kyrie Eleison* inclusively, I should advise the Assistants to an humble Confession of their Sins to God, with a most hearty Repentance, and earnestly begging his Mercy.

3^{dly}, At the *Gloria in Excelsis*, let them join in that heavenly Hymn, and excite their Souls to the Affections express'd therein.

4^{thly}, At the *Collects*, let them recommend to God their own Necessities, and those of the whole Church.

5^{thly}, At the *Epistle*, *Gradual* and *Gospel*, either let them attend to the heavenly Lessons contained in them; or, if they have not the Convenience for this, let them employ themselves in giving Thanks to God for revealing to us his divine Truths, and instructing us not only by his Servants the Prophets and Apostles, but also by his Son; and begging of God that their Lives may be always conformable to the Maxims of his Gospel.

6thly, At the *Credo*, let them recite it to themselves, with a lively Faith of those great Truths contained in it.

7thly, At the *Offertory*, let them join with the Priest in offering up first the *Host*, and then the *Chalice*, for themselves and for the whole Church; but let them at the same Time unite themselves closely with their High-Priest *Christ Jesus*, and with him, thro' him, and in him, offer up their Hearts and Souls to God, to be consecrated to his divine Service, and changed into him; and in particular, at the mingling of the Water with the Wine in the Chalice, let them pray for this happy Union with God.

8thly, At the *Lavabo*, when the Priest washes his Fingers at the Corner of the Altar, let them excite in their Souls a hearty Act of Repentance, and beg to be washed from their Sins in the Blood of the Lamb.

9thly, When the Priest turns about and says, *Orate Fratres*, let them pray that God would accept of that Oblation for his own Honour and their Salvation.

10thly, At the *Preface*, let them raise up their Hearts to God at *Sursum Corda*, and pour forth their Souls in Thanksgiving to him; joining themselves with the heavenly Choirs, and with them humbly and fervently pronouncing that sacred Hymn, *Sanctus*, &c. *Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God of Hosts*, &c.

11thly, During the *Canon* of the Mass, let them, together with the Priest, and together with the invisible Priest *Christ Jesus*, offer up the Sacrifice for the four Ends of Sacrifice, viz. 1. For God's Honour, Adoration and Glory. 2. In Thanksgiving for all his Benefits, and especially for our Redemption thro' *Jesus Christ*. 3. To obtain Mercy and Pardon thro' him for all their Sins. 4. To obtain
all

all Graces and Blessings of which they stand in Need. Let them also join in the solemn Commemoration that is here made of the Passion, Resurrection and Ascension of the Son of God, and of the Glory of his Church triumphant in Heaven.

12thly, At the *Memento* for the Living, let them earnestly recommend to God their Parents, Friends, Benefactors, &c. their Superiors spiritual and temporal; those that have particularly desired their Prayers; those that are in their Agony, or other great Necessity, Temptation, or Affliction; those to whom they have given Scandal or ill Example; their Enemies, and all Unbelievers and Sinners, that God may convert them; in fine, all true Servants of God, and all such for whom God would have them to pray.

13thly, At the *Consecration* and *Elevation*, let them again offer themselves to God with and thro' *Christ*, and with all the Reverence of their Souls adore their Lord there really present under the Sacramental Veils.

14thly, At the *Memento* for the Dead, let them represent to the eternal Father this Victim, which takes away the Sins of the World, in Behalf of all the Faithful departed in the Communion of the Church, and particularly of their Relations, Friends, &c. and those who stand most in Need of Prayers, or for whom God is best pleased that they should pray.

15thly, At the *Pater Noster*, let them join in that heavenly Prayer; begging in the first Petition [*Hallowed be thy Name*] the Honour and Glory of God's Name; in the second Petition, the Propagation of his *Kingdom* here upon Earth, and that they may have a Share in his *Kingdom* in Heaven; in the third Petition, the perfect Accomplishment of his *Will* by all, and in all; in the fourth, the Participation of the *Bread of Life*; in the fifth, the *Forgiveness* of their *Sins*; in the sixth, the Grace of God against

Temptations; and in the seventh, a *Deliverance* from all *Evils*.

16thly, At the *breaking of the Host*, let them remember *Christ's* Body broken for them upon the Cross, and let them pray for that *Peace* which the Priest wishes them, with God, with their Neighbours, and with themselves.

17thly, At *Agnus Dei*, &c. let them in the Spirit of Humility and Contrition beg Mercy and Pardon for their Sins.

18thly, During the following Prayers, and whilst the Priest is receiving, let them make a *Spiritual Communion*, 1. By a lively *Faith* of the real Presence of the Lamb of God slain for our Sins, and of the Abundance of Grace which he brings to those that receive him worthily. 2. By an ardent *Desire* of partaking of this Life-giving Food. 3. By *humbly* acknowledging at the *Domine non sum dignus*, and heartily *bewailing* their Unworthiness and Sins, which hinder them from daring to approach to this heavenly Table. 4. By fervent *Prayer*, begging that *Christ* would communicate to them some Share in those Graces which he brings with him to the worthy Receiver, and that he would come at least spiritually to their Souls, and take Possession of them, and unite them to himself by an indissoluble Band of Love.

19thly, After the *Communion*, let them return *Thanks* to God for the Passion and Death of his Son, and for having been permitted to assist at these divine Mysteries; let them receive with Humility the Benediction given by the Priest in the Name of the Blessed Trinity; let them beg Pardon for their Negligences and Distractions; and so offering themselves and all their Undertakings to God, depart in Peace.

2. What Advice would you give to those who thro' Indisposition, or other unavoidable Impediments,

ments, are not able to assist at Mass upon a *Sunday* or *Holiday*?

A. I would advise them to endeavour to hear Mass, at least in Spirit, according to the *Method* prescribed by Mr. *Gother*, for the *Absent*, in the little Book of *Instructions and Devotions for hearing Mass*.

Q. What if a Person, thro' the *absolute* Necessity of his unhappy Circumstances, should be tied to a Place where he can never hear Mass, do you think he might not then be allowed to join in Prayer with those of another Communion, by way of supplying this Defect?

A. No certainly: 'Tis a Misfortune, and a great Misfortune, to be kept, like *David*, when he was persecuted by *Saul*, at a Distance from the Temple of God, and his sacred Mysteries; but it would be a Crime to join one's self upon that Account with an Heretical or Schismatical Congregation, whose Worship God rejects as sacrilegious and impious.. In such a Case therefore a Christian must serve his God alone to the best of his Power, by offering to him the Homage of *Prayer, Adoration, Contrition, &c.* and must frequently hear Mass in Spirit, by joining himself with all the Faithful throughout the Earth, where-ever they are offering to God that divine Sacrifice; ever sighing after these heavenly Mysteries, and praying for his Delivery from that *Babylon*, which keeps him at a Distance from the Temple of God.

C H A P. VIII.

Of saying Mass in Latin.

Q. IS it not a great Prejudice to the Faithful, that the Mass is said in *Latin*, which is a Language

guage that the Generality of them do not understand?

A. 'Tis no Prejudice to them at all, provided they be well instructed in the Nature of this Sacrifice, and taught (as we have explained above) how to accompany the Priest with Prayers and Devotions adapted to every Part of the Mass; such as they commonly have in their *Manuals* or other Prayer-Books. Hence 'tis visible to any unprejudiced Eye, that there is far more Devotion amongst Catholicks at Mass then there is at Protestants *Common Prayer*.

Q. But is not the Mass also a *Common Prayer*, that ought to be said alike by all the Faithful?

A. 'Tis a *Common Sacrifice*, that is offer'd for all, and in some Manner by all; but as for the particular Form of Prayers used by the Priest in the Mass, there is no Obligation for the Faithful to recite the same: All that God or his Church expect from them, is to assist at that Sacrifice with Attention and Devotion: And this they fully comply with, when they endeavour to follow the Directions given above, and use such Prayers as are best adapted to each Part of the Mass; tho' they be not the self-same as the Priest uses.

Q. Can you explain to me by some Example how a Person may devoutly and profitably assist at this Sacrifice, tho' he be ignorant of the Prayers which the Priest is saying?

A. Yes: What do you think if you or any good Christian had been present upon Mount *Calvary*, when *Christ* was offering himself upon the Cross a Sacrifice for the Sins of the whole World? would not the very Sight of what was doing (provided that you had the same Faith in *Christ* as you now have) have sufficed to excite in your Soul most lively Acts of Love of God, Thanksgiving for so great a Mercy, Detestation of your Sins, &c. tho'

tho' you could neither hear any Word from the Mouth of *Christ* your High-Priest, nor know in particular what pass'd in his Soul? Just so in the Mass, which is the same Sacrifice as that which *Christ* offer'd upon the Cross, because both the Priest and the Victim are the same; 'tis abundantly sufficient for the People's Devotion, to be well instructed in what is then doing, and to excite in their Souls suitable Acts of *Adoration, Thanksgiving, Repentance, &c.* tho' they understand not the particular Prayers used by the Priest at that Time.

I must add, that for the devoutly and profitably concurring in Sacrifice offer'd to God, 'tis not only not necessary that the People should hear or recite the same Prayers with the Priest, but that even the very seeing of him is more than God was pleas'd to require in his Law. Hence we find, St. *Luke* i. 10. that *the whole Multitude of the People were praying without*, when *Zacharias* went into the Temple to burn Incense. And *Levit.* xvi. 17. it was expressly order'd, that there should be no Man in the Tabernacle or Temple, when the High-Priest went with the Blood of the Victims into the Sanctuary to make Atonement.

Q. But does not St. *Paul*, 1 *Cor.* xiv. condemn the Use of *unknown Tongues* in the Liturgy of the Church?

A. He has not one Word in that whole Chapter of the *Liturgy* of the Church; but only reprehends the Abuse of the Gift of *Tongues*, which some amongst the *Corinthians* were guilty of, who, out of Ostentation, affected to make Exhortations or extemporary Prayers in their Assemblies in Languages utterly unknown, which for want of an Interpreter could be of no Edification to the rest of the Faithful. But this is far from being the Practice of the Catholic Church; where all Exhortations, Sermons, and

and such like Instructions, are made in the vulgar Language; where no new unknown extemporary Prayers are recited, but the ancient publick Liturgy and Office of the Church, which by long Use are well known, at least as to the Substance, by the Faithful; where, in fine, there is no Want of Interpreters, since the People have the Church-Offices interpreted in their ordinary Prayer Books; and the Pastors are commanded to explain to them the Mysteries contained in the Mass. *Council of Trent, Sess. 22. Chap. 8.*

Q. But why does the Church celebrate the Mass in *Latin*, rather than in the vulgar Language?

A. 1st, Because it is her ancient Language, used in all her sacred Offices, even from the Apostles Days, throughout all the *Western* Parts of the World; and therefore the Church, which hates *Novelty*, desires to celebrate her Liturgy in the same Language as the Saints have done for so many Ages. 2^{dly}, For a greater *Uniformity* in the Publick Worship; that so a Christian, in whatsoever Country he chances to be, may still find the Liturgy perform'd in the same Manner, and in the same Language to which he is accusom'd at Home: And the *Latin* is certainly of all Languages the most proper for this, as being the most universally studied and known. 3^{dly}, To avoid the Changes to which all vulgar Languages, as we find by Experience, are daily exposed: For the Church is unwilling to be chopping and changing her Liturgy at every Turn of Language.

Q. Have any other Christians besides *Roman-Catholicks* ever celebrated their Liturgy in a Language which the greater Part of the People did not understand?

A. Yes: 'Tis the Practice of the *Greeks*, as we learn from *Alex. Ross*, in his *View of the Religions of Europe*, p. 481; and *Mr. Breerwood*, in his *Enquiries*, Chap. 2. p. 12. 'Tis the Practice of all other

other Sects of Christians in the *East* and *South*, viz. of the *Armenians*, of the *Syrians*, of the *Nestorians*, of the *Cophts*, or *Egyptians*, and of the *Abassins*, or *Ethiopians*, who all use in their Liturgies their ancient Languages, which have long since ceased to be understood by the People; as we learn from Monsieur *Renaudot*, in his *Dissertation upon the Oriental Liturgies*, Chap. 6. And as for Protestants, we learn from Dr. *Heylin's History of the Reformation*, p. 128, &c. That in Queen *Elizabeth's* Time, "The *Irish* Parliament passed an Act
" for the Uniformity of Common-Prayer; with
" Permission of saying the same in *Latin*, where
" the Minister had not the Knowledge of the *Eng-*
" *lish* Tongue. But for translating it into *Irish*
" there was no Care taken. The People are re-
" quired by that Statute, under several Penalties,
" to frequent their Churches, and to be present
" at the Reading the *English* Liturgy, which they
" understood no more then they do the Mass.
" By which Means . . . we have furnish'd the *Pa-*
" *pists* with an excellent Argument against our-
" selves, for having the Divine Service celebrated
" in such a Language as the People do not under-
" stand". Thus Dr. *Heylin*.

C H A P. IX.

Of the Sacrament of Penance: Of Confession, and the Preparation for it: Of Absolution, &c.

2. **W**HAT do you mean by the Sacrament of Penance?

A. An Institution of *Christ*, by which our Sins are forgiven, which we fall into after Baptism.

2. In what does this Institution consist?

A. On

A. On the Part of the Penitent, it consists in these three Things, *viz. Contrition, Confession and Satisfaction*; and on the Part of the Minister, in the *Absolution* pronounced by the Authority of *Jesus Christ*. So that Penance is a Sacrament by which the Faithful, that have fallen into Sins, confessing the same with a true Repentance, and a sincere Purpose of making Satisfaction to God, are absolved from their Sins by the Minister of God:

Q. How do you prove that the Ministers of God have any such Power as to absolve Sinners from their Sins?

A. I prove it from St. *John* xx. 22, 23. where *Christ* said to his Minister, *Receive ye the Holy Ghost; whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them, and whose sins you shall retain, they are retained,* And St. *Matt.* xviii. 18. *Verily I say unto you, whatsoever ye shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loos'd in heaven.*

Q. But was this Power given to any besides the Apostles?

A. It was certainly given to them and to their Successors till the End of the World; no less than the Commission of preaching, baptizing, &c. which, tho' address'd to the Apostles, was certainly design'd to continue with their Successors the Pastors of the Church for ever, according to that of *Christ*, *Matt.* xxviii. 20, *Lo, I am with you always, even till the end of the world.* And so the Protestant Church understands this Text, in the Order for the Visitation of the Sick, in the Common-Prayer-Book, where she prescribes a Form of Absolution the same in Substance as that used in the Catholick Church, *viz.*

Our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath left Power to his Church to absolve all Sinners who truly repent and believe in him, of his great Mercy forgive thee thine Offences:

Offences: And by his Authority committed to me, I absolve thee from all thy Sins, in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

Q. Is it then your Doctrine that any Man can forgive Sins?

A. We do not believe that any Man can forgive Sins by his own Power, as no Man by his own Power can raise the Dead to Life: Because both the one and the other equally belong to the Power of God. But as God has sometimes made Men his Instruments in raising the Dead to Life; so we believe that he has been pleas'd to appoint that his Ministers should, in Virtue of his Commission, as his Instruments and by his Power, absolve repenting Sinners: And as this is evident from the Texts above quoted, it must be a false Zeal, under Pretext of maintaining the Honour of God, to contradict this Commission, which he has so evidently given to his Church.

Q. But will not Sinners thus be encouraged to go on in their evil Ways, upon the Confidence of being absolved by the Pastors of the Church, whenever they please, from their Sins?

A. The Pastors of the Church have no Power to absolve any one without a sincere Repentance and a firm Purpose of a new Life; and therefore the Catholick Doctrine of Absolution can be no Encouragement to any Man to go on in his Sins.

Q. What then is required on the Part of the Sinner, in order to obtain Forgiveness of his Sins in the Sacrament of Penance?

A. Three Things, viz. Contrition, Confession, and Satisfaction. By Contrition we mean a hearty Sorrow for having offended so good a God, with a firm Purpose of Amendment. By Confession we mean a full and sincere Accusation made to God's Minister, of all mortal Sin, which, after a diligent Examination of Conscience, a Person can call to his Remembrance.

By

By *Satisfaction* we mean *a faithful Performance of the Penance enjoined by the Priest.*

Q. What *Preparation* then do you recommend before *Confession*, in order to discharge one's self well of this important Duty?

A. A Person that is *preparing* himself for *Confession* has four Things to do before he goes to *Confession*. 1st, He must pray earnestly to God for his divine Grace, that he may be enabled to make a true and good *Confession*. 2^{dly}, He must carefully examine his own Conscience, in order to find out what Sins he has committed, and how often. 3^{dly}, He must take due Time and Pains to beg God's Pardon, and to procure a hearty Sorrow for his Sins. 4^{thly}, He must make firm Resolutions with God's Grace to avoid the like Sins for the future, and to fly the immediate Occasions of them.

Q. Why must he begin his Preparation by praying earnestly to God for his divine Grace?

A. Because a good *Confession* is a Work of the utmost Importance, and withal a difficult Task, by reason of the Pride of our Hearts, and that Fear and Shame which is natural to us, and which the Devil, who is a mortal Enemy to Confession, seeks to improve with all his Power. And therefore a Christian, that desires to make a good *Confession*, ought in the first Place to address himself to God by fervent Prayer for his divine Assistance. And the more he finds the Enemy busy to instill into him an unhappy Fear or Shame, the more earnestly must he implore the Mercy and Grace of God upon this Occasion.

Q. In what Manner must a Person examine his Conscience in order to make a good Confession?

A. He must use a *Moral Diligence* to find out the Sins he has committed; which requires more or less Time and Care, according to the Length of Time from his last Confession, and the greater or less

less Care that he usually takes of the State of his Conscience. The common Method of *Examination* is, to consider what one has done against any of the Commandments of God; what Neglects there may have been of Church-Precepts; how one has discharged one's self of the common Duties of a Christian, and of the particular Duties of ones respective Station of Life; how far one has been guilty of any of the seven Sins, which are commonly called *Capital*, because they are the Springs or Fountains from whence all our Sins flow, &c. And for the helping of a Person's Memory in this Regard, the Table of Sins which is found in the Manual or other Prayer-Books may be of no small Service.

Q. Is a Person to examine himself as to the Number of Times that he has been guilty of this or that Sin?

A. Yes: Because he is obliged to confess, as near as he can, the Number of his Sins. But in Sins of *Habit*, which have been of long standing and very numerous, it will be enough to examine and confess the length of Time that he has been subject to such a Sin, and how many Times he has fallen into it, in a Day, Week or Month, one Time with another.

Q. What Method do you prescribe to a Person in order to procure that hearty Sorrow for Sin, which is the most necessary Part of the Preparation for Confession?

A. The best Method to procure it is to beg it heartily of God; for it must be his Gift: None but God can give that Change of Heart, which is so essential to a good Confession; and he has been pleas'd to promise, *St. Matt. vii. 7. Ask and it shall be given you: seek and you shall find: knock and it shall be opened unto you.* To this End also pious Meditations and Considerations, and devout Acts of Con-

Contrition, which are found in Books of Devotion, will much contribute, if read leisurely and attentively, so as to sink into the Heart. But because many Persons content themselves with running over in haste the *Prayers before Confession*, which they meet with in their Books, with little or no Change in the Heart, which perhaps is grown hard by sinful Habits, 'tis to be fear'd their Performances are too often nothing worth in the Sight of God.

2. What then do you advise in the Case of *habitual Sinners*, in order to procure a true Change of Heart?

A. I advise them to a *Spiritual Retreat* for some Days, in which, being retired as much as possible from the Noise of the World, they may think upon the great Truths of Religion; of the End for which they came into the World; of the Benefits of God; of the Enormity of Sin; of the sudden passing away of all that this World admires; of the four last Things; of the Passion of *Christ*, &c. that so the serious Consideration of these great Truths, joined to Retirement and Prayer, may make a due Impression on their Hearts, and effectually convert them to God. Those whose Circumstances will not permit them to make a regular *Retreat*, may at least endeavour during some Days to think as often and as seriously as they can upon the Truths above-mentioned; and by frequently and fervently calling upon the Father of Mercies, in the Midst of all their Employments, may hope to procure to themselves the like Grace.

2. What must be the chief Motive of a Sinner's Sorrow and Repentance, in order to qualify him for Absolution?

A. Divines are not perfectly agreed in the Resolution of this Query, but are all perfectly agreed in advising every one to aim at the best Motive he can; and that the best and safest Way is to renounce and detest

detest our Sins for the Love of God above all Things.

Q. What do you mean by the Resolution of Amendment, which you suppose to be a necessary Ingredient in the Preparation for Confession?

A. I mean a full Determination of the Soul to fly for the future all wilful Sin, and the immediate Occasions of it.

Q. What do you mean by the *immediate Occasions of Sin*?

A. All such Company, Places, Employments, Diversions, Books, &c. which are apt to draw a Person to mortal Sin, either in Deed, or at least in Thought.

Q. And is a Person indispensably obliged to avoid all such immediate Occasions of Sin?

A. He is obliged to avoid them to the very utmost of his Power, according to the Gospel-Rule, of parting even with a Hand or an Eye, that is an Occasion of Offence to the Soul, St. *Matt.* xviii. 8, 9.

Q. What Scripture do you bring to recommend the Confession of our Sins to God's Ministers?

A. 1st, The Precept of God in the *Old Testament*, Numb. v. 6, 7. *When a man or woman shall commit any sin that men commit, to do a trespass against the Lord, and that person be guilty, then they shall confess their sins which they have done, &c.* 2^{dly}, The Example of the People that hearken'd to the preaching of St. *John the Baptist*, who were baptized by him, *confessing their Sins*, St. *Matt.* iii. 6. 3^{dly}, The Prescription of St. *James* v. 16. *Confess your sins one to another*; that is, to the *Priests or Elders* of the Church, whom the Apostle had ordered to be called for, ver. 14. 4^{thly}, The Practice of the first Christians, *Acts* xix. 18. *Many that believed came, and confessed and declared their deeds.*

Q. How do you prove that there is any Command of Christ for the Confession of our Sins to his Ministers?

A.

A. I prove it from the Commission which *Christ* has given to his Ministers, *St. John* xx. 22, 23. *Receive ye the Holy Ghost: whosesoever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them, and whosesoever sins ye retain, they are retained.* And *St. Matt.* xviii. 18. *Verily, I say unto you, whatsoever ye shall bind on earth, shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth, shall be loosed in heaven.* For 'tis visible, that this Commission of binding or loosing, forgiving or retaining Sins, according to the Merits of the Cause and the Disposition of the Penitent, cannot be rightly executed without taking Cognizance of the State of the Soul, of him who desires to be absolved from his Sins, by virtue of this Commission; and consequently cannot be rightly executed without *Confession*. So that we conclude with *St. Augustine**, that to pretend 'tis enough to confess to God alone, is making void the Power of the Keys given to the Church, *St. Matt.* xvi. 19; that it is contradicting the Gospel, and making void the Commission of *Christ*.

2. Are Christians then obliged to confess all their Sins to the Ministers of *Christ*?

A. They are obliged to confess all such Sins as are *mortal*, or of which they have reason to doubt lest they may be *mortal*; but they are not obliged to confess *venial* Sins, because as these do not exclude eternally from the Kingdom of Heaven, so there is not a strict Obligation of having Recourse for the Remission of them to the *Keys* of the Church.

2. But by what Rule shall a Person be able to make a Judgment whether his Sins be *mortal* or *venial*?

A. All those Sins are to be esteem'd *mortal* which the Word of God represents to us as hateful to

* *Homil. 49. Inter. 50.*

God, against which it pronounces a *Wo*, or of which it declares that such as do those Things shall not enter into the Kingdom of Heaven: Of these we have many Instances, *Rom. i. 29, 30, 31. 1 Cor. vi. 9. 10. Galat. v. 19, 20, 21. Ephes. v. 5. Apocalypse xxi. 8.* and in the *Old Testament, Isai. v. Ezek. xviii, &c.* But tho' it be very easy to know that some Sins are *mortal*, and others but *venial*, yet to pretend to be able always perfectly to distinguish which are *mortal* and which are not, is above the Reach of the most able Divines; and therefore a prudent Christian will not easily pass over Sins in Confession, under Pretence of their being *venial*, unless he be certain of it. And this Caution is more particularly necessary in certain Cases, where Persons, being ashamed to confess their Sins, are willing to persuade themselves they are but *venial*, for in such Cases 'tis much to be feared, lest their Self-love should bias their Judgment.

Q. Is it a great Crime to conceal, thro' Shame or Fear, any *mortal* Sin in Confession?

A. Yes, it is a great Crime; because it is telling a *Lie* to the Holy Ghost; for which Kind of Sin *Ananias* and *Saphira* were struck dead by a just Judgment of God, *Acts v.* 'Tis acting *deceitfully* with God, and that in a Matter of the utmost Consequence. 'Tis a *Sacrilege*, because 'tis an Abuse of the Sacrament of Penance, and is generally follow'd by another greater Sacrilege, in receiving unworthily the Body and Blood of *Christ*. And, what is still more dreadful, such Sinners seldom stop at the first bad Confession and Communion, but usually go on for a long Time in these Sins, and very often die in them. But 'tis not only a great Crime to conceal one's Sins in Confession, 'tis a great Folly and Madness too; because such Offenders, if they have not renounced their Faith, know very well that these Sins must be confessed, or that they must burn for

for them; and they cannot be ignorant, that these bad Confessions do but increase their Burthen, by adding to it the dreadful Guilt of repeated Sacrilleges, which they will have far more Difficulty of confessing, than these very Sins of which they are now so much ashamed.

Q. Have you any Instances in Church-History of remarkable Judgments of God, upon those that have presumed to approach to the Blessed Sacrament, without making a sincere Confession of their Sins?

A. Yes: We have several recorded by St. *Cyprian* [*L. de Lapsis*] and other grave Authors; but the most common, and indeed the most dreadful Punishment of these Sins, is a Blindness and Hardness of Heart, which God justly permits such Sinners to fall into, and which is the broad Road to *final Impenitence*.

Q. Have you any Thing to offer by way of Encouragement to Sinners to confess their Sins sincerely?

A. Yes: 1st, The great Benefit that their Souls will reap in the *Remission of their Sins*, promised by *Christ*, St. *Matt.* xviii. 18. and St. *John* xx. 22, 23. and the other Advantages which an humble Confession of Sins brings along with it; such as a present Comfort and Ease of Conscience, a Remedy against future Sins, Directions and Prescriptions from the Minister of God for the curing the spiritual Maladies of the Soul, &c. 2^{dly}, That by this short passing Confusion, which will last but a Moment, they will escape the dreadful Shame of having their Sins written on their Foreheads at the last Day to their eternal Confusion. 3^{dly}, That the greater their Sins have been, the greater will be the Joy, as of the whole Court of Heaven, so of their Confessor here upon Earth, to see their sincere Conversion to God testified by the humble Confession, of their most shameful Sins: Upon which Account,

so

so far from thinking worse of them, he will conceive far greater Hopes of their future Progress, and a more tender Affection for them. 4thly, That by the Law of God and his Church, whatever is declared in Confession can never be discovered directly nor indirectly to any one, upon any Account whatsoever, but remains an eternal Secret betwixt God and the penitent Soul; of which the Confessor cannot, even to save his own Life, make any Use at all to the Penitent's Discredit, Disadvantage, or any other Grievance whatsoever. *Vide Decretum Innocentii XI. die 18. Novemb. Anno 1682.*

Q. But suppose it has been the Sinner's Misfortune to have made a bad Confession, or perhaps a great many bad Confessions, what must he do to repair this Fault, and to reinstate himself in God's Grace?

A. He must apply himself to God by hearty Prayer for his Grace and Mercy; and so prepare himself to make a good general Confession of all his Sins, at the least from the Time of his going astray: Because all the Confessions that he has made since he began to conceal his Sins were all sacrilegious, and consequently null and invalid; and therefore must be all repeated again.

Q. But is he obliged in this Case to confess again those Sins which he has confessed before?

A. He is: Because the concealing of any one mortal Sin in Confession makes the whole Confession nothing worth; and all the following Confessions, till this Fault is repaired, are all null; and therefore they must all be made again. But if it be to the same Confessor, who has a confused Remembrance of the Sins before confessed, it may suffice for the Penitent to accuse himself in general Terms of all that has been confessed before; and then to specify in particular the Sins that have been omitted, together

together with the Number of the bad Confessions and Communions that have been made.

Q. Are there any other Cases in which the Confession is nothing worth, and consequently must be made again, besides this Case of concealing *mortal Sin*?

A. Yes: If the Penitent has taken no Care to examine his Conscience, or to procure the necessary Sorrow for his Sins, or a true Purpose of Amendment, his Confession is good for nothing, and must be repeated, as also if the Priest to whom he has made his Confession has not had the necessary Faculties and Approbation.

Q. What if the Patient, thro' Forgetfulness, pass over some *mortal Sin* in Confession?

A. This Omission, provided there was no considerable Negligence which gave Occasion to it, does not make the Confession invalid. But then the Sin that has been thus omitted must be confessed afterwards, when the Penitent remembers it; and if he remembers it before Communion, it ought to be confessed before he goes to Communion; if he remembers it not till after Communion, he must confess it in his next Confession.

Q. Is a Person obliged to confess the *Circumstances* of his Sins?

A. He is obliged to confess such *Circumstances* as quite alter the Kind or Nature of the Sin; as also, according to many Divines, such as very notoriously aggravate the Guilt: But as for other *Circumstances*, they need not be declared; and particularly in Sins of Unchastity it may sometimes be dangerous to be too circumstantial in expressing the Manner of the Sin.

Q. Would it be a Crime to neglect the Penance or Satisfaction enjoined by the Priest?

A. Yes, it would; the more because we ought to regard the Penance enjoined as an Exchange which God

God makes of the eternal Punishments, which we have deserved by Sin, into these small penitential Works.

Q. Has the Church of God always enjoined Penances to Sinners?

A. Yes, she has; and in the Primitive Times much more severe than now-a-days, when three, seven, and ten Years of Penance, used to be imposed for Sins of Impurity, Perjury, &c.

Q. Does the Church at present approve of giving ordinarily very slight Penances for very great Sins?

A. So far from it, that the Council of *Trent*, *Sess. 14. Chap. 8.* gives us to understand, that a Confessor, by such excessive Indulgence, is in danger of drawing upon his own Head the Guilt of his Penitent's Sins; and declares, that a Priest ought to enjoin a suitable Penance, according to the Quality of the Crime, and the Penitent's Ability.

Q. Ought the Penitent to content himself with performing the Penance enjoined, so as to take no farther Thought about making Satisfaction to God for his Sins?

A. No, by no means; for 'tis to be feared, that the Penance enjoined is seldom sufficient to take off all the Punishment due to God's Justice upon Account of our Sins; and 'tis certain, that the more a Penitent is touch'd with a hearty Sorrow for his Offences against God, the more he will be desirous of making Satisfaction, and revenging upon himself by penitential Severities the Injury done to God by his Sins. Hence the Life of a good Christian ought to be a perpetual Penance.

Q. What then do you recommend to a Penitent, besides the Performance of his Penance, in order to cancel the Punishment due to his Sins, and to make Satisfaction to the Divine Justice?

A. I recommend to him, 1st, Ever to maintain in himself a *penitential Spirit*, and in that Spirit to perform

perform all his Prayers; daily offering up to God the Sacrifice of a *contrite and humble Heart*. 2dly, I recommend to him *Alms-deeds*, both corporal and piritual, according to his Ability. 3dly, *Fasting*, and other Mortifications; especially the retrenching all Superfluities in eating, drinking, and sleeping; all unnecessary Diversions, and much more all such as are dangerous; all idle Curiosity, Vanity, &c. 4thly, I recommend to him to have recourse to *Indulgences*, and to perform with religious Exactitude the Conditions thereunto required. 5thly, In fine, I recommend to him to take from the Hands of God, in Part of Penance for his Sins, all Sickneses, Pains, Labours, and all other Crosses whatsoever, and daily to offer them up to God, to be united to, and sanctified by the Sufferings and Death of *Jesus Christ*.

2. What is the Form and Manner of *Confession*?

A. The Penitent, having duly prepared himself by Prayer, by a serious Examination of his Conscience, and a hearty Contrition for his Sins, kneels down at the Confession-Chair on one Side of the Priest, and making the Sign of the Cross upon himself, asks the Priest's Blessing, saying, *Pray, Father, give me your Blessing*. Then the Priest blesses him in the following Words: *The Lord be in thy Heart, and in thy Lips, that thou mayst truly and humbly confess all thy Sins, in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.* After which the Penitent says the *Confiteor*, in *Latin* or in *English*, as far as *Meâ Culpâ*, &c. and then accuses himself of all his Sins, as to the Kind, Number, and aggravating Circumstances; and concludes with this or the like Form: *Of these, and all other Sins of my whole Life, I beg Pardon of God, and Penance and Absolution of you my ghostly Father.* And so he finishes the *Confiteor*, *Therefore I beseech thee*, &c. And

And then attends to the Instructions given by the Priest, and humbly accepts the Penance enjoined.

Q. What is the Form of *Absolution*?

A. 1st, The Priest says, *May the Almighty God have Mercy on thee, and forgive thee thy Sins, and bring thee to Life everlasting. Amen.*

Then stretching forth his Right-hand towards the Penitent, he says, *May the Almighty and Merciful Lord give thee Pardon, Absolution and Remission of thy Sins. Amen.*

Our Lord Jesus Christ *absolve thee*; and I, by his Authority, *absolve thee*, in the first Place, from every Bond of Excommunication or Interdict, as far as I have Power, and thou standest in need: In the next Place, I *absolve thee* from all thy Sins, in the Name of the Father, ✠ and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

May the Passion of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Merits of the blessed Virgin Mary, and of all the Saints, and whatsoever Good thou shalt do, or whatsoever Evil thou shalt suffer, be to thee unto the Remission of thy Sins, the Increase of Grace, and the Recompence of everlasting Life. Amen.

Q. In wat Cases is a Confessor to defer or deny Absolution?

A. The Rule of the Church is to *defer* Absolution, except in the Case of Necessity, to those of whose Disposition the Confessor has just Cause to doubt; and to *deny* Absolution to those who are certainly indisposed for it; which is the Case of all such as refuse to forgive their Enemies, or to restore ill-gotten Goods, or to forsake the Habits or immediate Occasions of Sin, or, in a Word, to comply with any Part of their Duty, to which they are obliged under mortal Sin. Rit. Rom. de Sacramento Pœnitentiæ.

Q. How do you prove, from all that has been said, that *Penance*, i. e. the *Confession* and *Absolution* of Sinners, is properly a *Sacrament*?

A. Because it is an *outward Sign of inward Grace*, ordained by Jesus Christ; which is the very Notion and Definition of a *Sacrament*: The *outward Sign* is found in the Sinner's *Confession*, and the Form of *Absolution* pronounced by the Priest; the *inward Grace* is the *Remission of Sins* promised by Jesus Christ, St. John xx. 22, 23. and the Ordinance of Christ is gathered from the same Place, and from St. Matt. xviii. 18.

CH A P. X.

Of Indulgences and Jubilees.

Q. WHAT do you mean by *Indulgences*?

A. There is not any Part of the Doctrine of the Catholick Church that is more grossly misrepresented by our Adversaries than this of *Indulgences*; for the Generality of Protestants imagine, that an *Indulgence* is a Leave to commit Sin, or, at least, that it is a Pardon for Sins to come; whereas indeed it is no such Thing. There is no Power in Heaven or Earth that can give Leave to commit Sin; and consequently there is no giving Pardon beforehand for Sins to come. All this is far from the Belief and Practice of the Catholick Church. By an *Indulgence* therefore we mean no more than a releasing to true Penitents the Debt of temporal Punishment, which remained due to their Sins, after the Sins themselves, as to the Guilt and eternal Punishment, had been already remitted by the Sacrament of Penance, or by perfect Contrition.

Q. Be pleased to explain this a little farther?

A. That

A. That you may understand this the better, take notice, that in Sin there are two Things ; there is the Guilt of the Sin, and there is the Debt of Punishment due to God upon Account of the Sin. Now, upon the Sinner's Repentance and Confession, the Sin is remitted as to the Guilt, and likewise as to the eternal Punishment in Hell, due to every mortal Sin ; but the Repentance and Conversion is seldom so perfect as to release the Sinner from all Debt of temporal Punishment due to God's Justice, which the Penitent must either discharge by the Way of Satisfaction and Penance ; or, if he be deficient therein, he must expect to suffer hereafter, in Proportion to this Debt which he owes to the Divine Justice. Now an *Indulgence*, when duly obtained, is a Release from this Debt of temporal Punishment.

2. How do you prove, that after the Guilt of Sin and the eternal Punishment has been remitted, there remains oftentimes a Debt of temporal Punishment due to the Divine Justice ?

A. I prove it, 1st, From Scripture ; where, to omit other Instances, we find in the Case of King David, 2 Sam. xii. that altho' upon his Repentance the Prophet Nathan assured him, ver. 13. that *the Lord had put away his sin*, yet he denounced unto him many temporal Punishments, which should be inflicted by reason of this Sin ; which accordingly afterwards ensued. See ver. 10, 11, 12, 14. 2^{dly}, I prove it from the perpetual Practice of the Church of God, of enjoining Penances to repenting Sinners, in order to cancel this Punishment due to their Sins.

2. How do you prove that the Church has received a Power from *Christ* of discharging a penitent Sinner from this Debt of temporal Punishment, which remains due upon Account of his Sins ?

A. I prove it by that Promise of our Lord made to *St. Peter*, *St. Matt. xvi. 19.* *I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth, shall be bound in heaven; and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth, shall be loosed in heaven.* Which Promise, made without any Exception, Reservation or Limitation, must needs imply a Power of loosing and releasing all such Bonds as might otherwise hinder or retard a Christian Soul from entering Heaven.

Q. Did the Primitive Church ever practise any Thing of this Nature?

A. Yes, very frequently, in discharging Penitents, when there appeared just Cause for it, from a great Part of the Penance due to their Sins, as may be seen in *Tertullian*, *St. Cyprian*, and other ancient Monuments: And of this Nature was what *St. Paul* himself practised in forgiving, as he says, *2 Cor. ii. 10. in the person of Christ*; that is, by the Power and Authority received from him, the incestuous *Corinthian*, without expecting his going through a longer Course of Penance.

Q. But were these primitive *Indulgences* understood to release the Punishment due to Sin in the Sight of God, or only that which was enjoined by the Church in her penitential Canons?

A. Both one and the other, as often as they were granted upon a just Cause; according to what our Lord had promised, *St. Matt. xviii. 18.* *Verily I say unto you, whatsoever you shall bind on earth, shall be bound in heaven; and whatsoever you shall loose on earth, shall be loosed in heaven.*

Q. What Conditions are necessary for the Validity of an *Indulgence*?

A. On the Part of him that grants the *Indulgence*, besides sufficient Authority, it is necessary that there be a just Cause or Motive for the Grant; for, according to the common Doctrine of the best Divines,

vines, *Indulgences* granted without Cause will not be ratified by Almighty God. 2dly, On the Part of him that ~~is~~ to obtain the *Indulgence*, it is requisite that he duly perform the Conditions prescribed, such as going to Confession and Communion, Fasting, Alms, Prayer, &c. and that he be in the State of Grace; for 'tis in vain to expect the Remission of the Punishment due to Sin, whilst a Person continues in the Guilt of mortal Sin.

Q. Does an *Indulgence* so far remit all temporal Punishment as to free a Penitent from all Obligation of doing Penance for his Sins?

A. No; for the Obligation of doing Penance for Sin, and leading a penitential Life, is an indispensable Duty. Hence the Church usually enjoins penitential Works, in order for the obtaining of *Indulgences*. And the Opinion of the learned Cardinal Cajetan, and others, is highly probable, that one Condition for attaining to the Benefit of an *Indulgence*, in the Release of the Punishment of the next Life, is a Disposition to do Penance in this Life; for the Treasure of the Church, out of which *Indulgences* are granted, is intended by our great Master for the Relief of the Indigent; yet not so as to encourage the Lazy, who refuse to labour at all for themselves.

Q. Are you then of Opinion, that a Christian receives no farther Benefit by an *Indulgence*, than he would do by the penitential Works, which he performs for the obtaining of that *Indulgence*?

A. I am far from being of that Opinion; for, according to that Way of thinking, no Benefit would be reaped from the *Indulgence*, but only from the Works performed for the obtaining of it: Whereas the Church of God has declared in the Council of Trent, that *Indulgences* are very wholesome to Christian People, Sess. 25. But what many Divines maintain is, that, regularly speaking, there is re-

quired, tho' not an Equality, yet some Proportion at least between the Works to be done for the obtaining of an *Indulgence*, and the *Indulgence* itself: And this I believe to be true. See *Soto* in *4tum. Dist. 21. Q. 2. Art. 2.* and *Sylvius* in *Supplem. Q. 25. Art. 2. Quæsitio 2. Conclus. 5.*

Q. What is meant by the *Treasure* of the Church, out of which *Indulgences* are said to be granted?

A. The *Treasure* of the Church, according to Divines, are the Merits and Satisfactions of *Christ* and his Saints; out of which the Church, when she grants an *Indulgence* to her Children, offers to God an Equivalent for the Punishment which was due to the Divine Justice: For the Merits and Satisfaction of *Christ* are of infinite Value, and never to be exhausted, and are the Source of all our Good; and the Merits and Satisfactions of the Saints, as they have their Value from *Christ*, and thro' him are accepted by the Father; so by the Communion, which all the Members of *Christ's* mystical Body have one with another, are applicable to the Faithful upon Earth.

Q. What is meant by a *plenary Indulgence*?

A. That which, when duly obtained, releases the whole Punishment that remained due upon Account of past Sins.

Q. What is meant by an *Indulgence* of seven Years, or of forty Days?

A. By an *Indulgence* of so many Years or Days is meant the Remission of the Penance of so many Years or Days, and consequently of the Punishment corresponding to the Sins, which by the Canons of the Church would have required so many Years or Days of Penance, *Bellarmin L. 1. de Indulg. c. 9.* And thus, if it be true, that there ever were any Grants of *Indulgences* of a thousand Years, or more, they are to be understood with relation to the Punishment

nishment corresponding to the Sins, which, according to the penitential Canons, would have required a Thousand or more Years of Penance. For since by these Canons seven or ten Years of Penance were usually assign'd for one mortal Sin of Lust, Perjury, &c. it follows, that habitual Sinners, according to the Rigour of the Canons, must have been liable to great Numbers of Years of Penance, and perhaps some Thousands of Years: And tho' they could not be expected to live so long as to fulfil this Penance; yet, as by their Sins they had incurred a Debt of Punishment proportionable to so long a Time of Penance, these *Indulgences* of so many Years, if ever granted (which some call in Question) were designed to release them from this Debt.

Q. What is the Meaning of *Indulgences* for the Dead?

A. They are not granted by Way of *Absolution*, since the Pastors of the Church have not that Jurisdiction over the Dead: But they are only available to the Faithful departed, by Way of *Suffrage*, or spiritual Succour, applied to their Souls out of the Treasure of the Church.

Q. What is the Meaning of a *Jubilee*?

A. A *Jubilee*, so called from the Resemblance it bears with the *Jubilee-Year* in the Old Law, *Levit. xxv. and xxvii.* (which was a Year of Remission, in which Bondsmen were restored to Liberty, and every one returned to his Possessions) is a *plenary Indulgence* granted every twenty-fifth Year, as also upon other extraordinary Occasions, to such as being truly penitent, shall worthily receive the Blessed Sacrament, and perform the other Conditions of Fasting, Alms and Prayer, usually prescribed at such Times.

Q. What then is the Difference betwixt a *Jubilee* and any other *plenary Indulgence*?

A. A *Jubilee* is more solemn, and accompanied with certain Privileges, not usually granted upon other Occasions, with regard to the being absolved by any approved Confessor from all Excommunications and other reserved Cases, and having Vows exchanged into the Performance of other Works of Piety. To which we may add, that as a *Jubilee* is extended to the whole Church, which at that Time joins as it were in a Body, in offering a holy Violence to Heaven by Prayers and penitential Works; and as the Cause for granting an *Indulgence* at such Times is usually more evident, and more or greater Works of Piety are prescribed for the obtaining it, the *Indulgence* of consequence is likely to be much more certain and secure.

Q. What are the Fruits which usually are seen amongst Catholicks at the Time of a *Jubilee*?

A. As at that Time the Church most pressingly invites all Sinners to return to God with their whole Hearts, and encourages them by setting open her spiritual Treasure in their Favour, so the most usual Effects of a *Jubilee* are the Conversions of great Numbers of Sinners, and the multiplying of all Sorts of good Works amongst the Faithful. So far it is from being true, that *Indulgences* are an Encouragement to Sin, or an Occasion of a Neglect of good Works, as our Adversaries unjustly object.

CH A P. XI.

Of the Sacrament of Extreme Unction.

Q. WHAT do you mean by *Extreme Unction*?

A. I mean the Anointing of the Sick, prescribed St. James v. 14, 15. *Is any one sick among you, let him call for the priests of the church, and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil, in the*
name

name of the Lord: and the prayer of faith shall save the sick man, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he be in Sins, they shall be forgiven him.

Q. How do you prove that this Anointing of the Sick is a Sacrament?

A. Because it is an *outward Sign of an inward Grace*, or a divine Ordinance, to which is annexed a Promise of Grace in God's Holy Word. The Anointing, together with the Prayers that accompany it, are the *outward Sign*; the *Ordinance of God* is found in the Words of St. James above quoted; the *inward Grace* is promised in the same Place, *The prayer of faith shall save the sick man—and if he be in sins, they shall be forgiven him.*

Q. How do you prove that this Ordinance was designed for all Ages, and not only for the Time of the Apostles?

A. Because the Words of the Scripture, in which this Ordinance is contained, are no Way limited to the Apostles Time, no more than the Words of the Ordinance of Baptism, St. Matt. xxviii. and because the Church of God, the best Interpreter of his Word and Ordinances, has practised it in all Ages.

Q. To what Kind of People is the Sacrament of *Extreme Unction* to be administer'd?

A. To those who, after having come to the Use of Reason, are in danger of Death by Sicknes; but not to Children under the Age of Reason, nor to Persons sentenced to Death, &c.

Q. Can the same Person receive the Sacrament of *Extreme Unction* more than once?

A. Yes, but not in the same Illness, except it should be of long Continuance, and that the State of the sick Man should be changed so as to recover out of the Danger, and then fall into the like Case again.

Q. What

Q. What are the Effects and Fruits of the Sacrament of *Extreme Unction*?

A. 1st, It remits Sins, at least such as are *venial*; for *mortal* or deadly Sins must be remitted, before receiving *Extreme Unction*, by the Sacrament of Penance and Confession. 2^{dly}, It heals the Soul of her Infirmary and Weakness, and a certain Propension to Sin contracted by former Sins, which are apt to remain in the Soul, as the unhappy Relicks of Sin; and it helps to remove something of the Debt of Punishment due to past Sins. 3^{dly}, It imparts Strength to the Soul, to bear more easily the Illness of the Body, and arms her against the Attempts of her spiritual Enemies. 4^{thly}, If it be expedient for the Good of the Soul, it often restores the Health of the Body.

Q. What Kind of Oil is that which is made Use of in the Sacrament of *Extreme Unction*?

A. Oil of Olives, solemnly blessed by the Bishop every Year on *Maundy-Thursd*ay.

Q. What is the Form and Manner of administering this Sacrament?

A. 1st, The Priest, having instructed and disposed the sick Person for this Sacrament, recites, if the Time permits, certain Prayers prescribed in the *Ritual*, to beg God's Blessing upon the Sick, and that his Holy Angels may defend them that dwell in that Habitation from all Evil. 2^{dly}, Is said the *Confiteor*, or general Form of Confession and Absolution; and the Priest exhorts all present to join in Prayer for the Person that is sick; and, if Opportunity permits, according to the Quality or Number of Persons there present, to recite the seven Penitential Psalms, with the Litanies, or other Prayers, upon this Occasion. 3^{dly}, The Priest, making three Times the Sign of the Cross upon the sick Person at the Name of the Blessed Trinity, says, *In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost,*
may

may all Power of the Devils be extinguished in thee, by the laying on of our Hands, and by the Invocation of all the Holy Angels, Archangels, Patriarchs, Prophets, Apostles, Martyrs, Confessors, Virgins, and all the Saints. Amen. 4thly, Dipping his Thumb in the Holy Oil, he anoints the sick Person, in the Form of the Cross, upon the Eyes, Ears, Nose, Mouth, Hands and Feet ; at each Anointing making Use of this Form of Prayer : *Thro' this Holy Unction, and his own most tender Mercy, may the Lord pardon thee whatsoever Sins thou hast committed by the Sight. Amen.* And so of the Hearing, and the rest, adapting the Form to the several Senses. 5thly, After this the Priest goes on : *Lord have Mercy on us. Christ have Mercy on us. Lord have Mercy on us. Our Father, &c. And lead us not into Temptation. R. But deliver us from Evil. V. Save thy Servant. R. Trusting in thee, O my God. V. Send him, O Lord, Help from thy Sanctuary. R. And do thou defend him from Sion. V. Be to him, O Lord, a Tower of Strength. R. From the Face of the Enemy. V. Let not the Enemy have any Power over him. R. Nor the Son of Iniquity be able to hurt him. V. Lord, hear my Prayer. R. And let my Cry come to thee. V. The Lord be with you. R. And with thy Spirit.*

Let us pray.

O Lord God, who hast said by thy Apostle James ; Is any one sick among you ? Let him call for the priests of the church, and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord ; and the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up ; and if he be in sins, they shall be remitted to him : *heal, we beseech thee, O our Redeemer, by the Grace of the Holy Ghost, the Maladies of this sick Man, cure his Wounds, and forgive him his Sins ; drive away from him all Pains of Mind and Body, and mercifully restore unto him perfect Health, both as to the interior and exterior ; that*
being

being recovered by thy Mercy, he may return to his former Duties, who livest and reignest, &c. Amen.

Let us pray.

LOOK down, we beseech thee, O Lord, on thy Servant N. fainting under the Infirmary of his Body, and refresh a Soul which thou hast created; that he, being improved by thy Chastisements, may be saved by thy Medicine. Through Christ our Lord. Amen.

Let us pray.

O Holy Lord, Almighty Father, Everlasting God, who, by imparting the Grace of thy Benediction to sick Bodies, preservest, according to the Multitude of thy Mercies, the Works of thy Hands; favourably attend to the Invocation of thy Name, and delivering thy Servant from his Illness, and restoring him to Health, raise him up by thy Right-hand, strengthen him by thy Virtue, defend him by thy Power, and restore him with all desired Prosperity to thy Holy Church. Through Christ our Lord. Amen.

As to what belongs to the Order of the Visitation of the Sick, and the Prayers and Devotions proper upon that Occasion, as also the Manner of assisting those that are dying, consult the Roman Ritual; out of which I shall present you with the following Form of the Recommendation of a departing Soul.

C H A P. XII.

The Order of the Recommendation of a Soul that is just departing.

Q. **W**HAT is the Form or Order of the Recommendation of a Soul to God in its last Passage?

A. 1st, There is a short Litany recited, adapted to that Occasion; then the following Prayers.

G.O.

GO forth, O Christian Soul, from this World, in the Name of God the Father Almighty, who created thee ; in the Name of *Jesus Christ*, the Son of the living God, who suffered for thee ; in the Name of the Holy Ghost, who has been poured forth upon thee ; in the Name of the Angels and the Archangels ; in the Name of the Thrones and Dominations ; in the Name of the Principalities and Powers ; in the Name of the Cherubim and Seraphim ; in the Name of the Patriarchs and Prophets ; in the Name of the Holy Apostles and Evangelists ; in the Name of the Holy Martyrs and Confessors ; in the Name of the Holy Monks and Hermits ; in the Name of the Holy Virgins, and of all the Saints of God : Let thy Place be this Day in Peace, and thy Abode in the Holy *Sion*. Through *Christ* our Lord. *Amen.*

O God most merciful, O God most clement, O God, who, according to the Multitude of thy tender Mercies, blottest out the Sins of the Penitent, and graciously remittest the Guilt of their past Offences ; mercifully regard this thy Servant *N.* and vouchsafe to hear him, who with the whole Confession of his Heart begs for the Remission of all his Sins. Renew, O most merciful Father, whatever has been corrupted in him thro' human Frailty, or violated thro' the Deceit of the Enemy ; and associate him as a Member of Redemption to the Unity of the Body of the Church. Have Compassion, Lord, on his Sighs ; have Compassion on his Tears ; and admit him, who has no Hope but in thy Mercy, to the Sacrament of thy Reconciliation. Through *Christ* our Lord. *Amen.*

I Recommend thee, dear Brother, to the Almighty God, and commit thee to his Care, whose Creature thou art ; that when thou shalt have paid the Debt of all Mankind by Death, thou mayest return
to

to thy Maker, who formed thee of the Dirt of the Earth. When thy Soul therefore shall depart from the Body, let the resplendent Multitude of the Angels meet thee; let the Court of Apostles come unto thee; let the triumphant Army of the Martyrs, clad in their white Robes, conduct thee; let the glorious Company of illustrious Confessors encompass thee; let the Choir of joyful Virgins receive thee; and mayest thou meet with a blessed Repose in the Bosom of the Patriarchs: Let *Jesus Christ* appear to thee with a mild and chearful Countenance, and order thee a Place amongst those that are to stand before him for ever. May'st thou never know the Horror of Darkness, the Crackling of Flames, or racking Torments. May the most wicked Enemy, with all his evil Spirits, be forced to give Way; may he tremble at thy Approach in the Company of Angels, and fly away into the vast *Chaos* of eternal Night. Let God arise, and his Enemies be dispersed; and let them that hate him fly before his Face; Let them, like Smoke, come to nothing; and as Wax that melts before the Fire, so let Sinners perish in the Sight of God; but may the Just feast and rejoice in his Sight. Let then all the Legions of Hell be confounded and put to shame; and may none of the Ministers of Satan dare to stop thee in thy Way. May *Christ* deliver thee from Torments, who was crucified for thee. May *Christ* deliver thee from eternal Death, who vouchsafed to die for thee. May *Christ* the Son of God place thee in the ever-pleasing Greens of his Paradise, and may he, the true Shepherd, number thee amongst his Sheep. May he absolve thee from all thy Sins, and place thee at his Right-hand in the Lot of his Elect. May'st thou see thy Redeemer Face to Face, and standing always in his Presence, behold with happy Eyes the most clear Truths. May'st thou be placed among the Companies of
the

the Blessed, and enjoy the Sweetness of the Contemplation of thy God for ever. *Amen.*

Receive thy Servant, O Lord, into the Place of Salvation, which he hopes for from thy Mercy. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant from all the Perils of Hell, from all Pains and all Tribulations. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st *Enoch* and *Elias* from the common Death of the World. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st *Noah* from the Flood. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st *Abraham* from *Ur* of the *Chaldeans*. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st *Job* from his Sufferings. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st *Isaac* from being sacrificed by the Hand of his Father *Abraham*. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st *Lot* from *Sodom*, and the Flames of Fire. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st *Moses* from the Hands of *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt*. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st *Daniel* from the Lion's Den. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st the three Children from the fiery Furnace, and from the Hands of a wicked King. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st *Susannah* from her false Accusers. R. *Amen.*

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st *David* from the Hands of King *Saul*, and from the Hands of *Goliath*. R. *Amen.*

Deliver,

Deliver, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant, as thou delivered'st *Peter* and *Paul* out of Prison. R. *Amen.*

And as thou delivered'st the most Blessed Virgin and Martyr St. *Thecla* from three most dreadful Torments, so vouchsafe to deliver the Soul of this thy Servant, and make it rejoice with thee in the Happinefs of Heaven. R. *Amen.*

WE commend to thee, O Lord, the Soul of thy Servant *N.* And we beseech thee, O Lord *Jesus Christ*, the Saviour of the World, that thou wouldst not refuse to admit into the Bosom of thy Patriarchs, a Soul for which in thy Mercy thou wast pleased to come down upon Earth. Own him for thy Creature, not made by any strange Gods, but by thee, the only living and true God; for there is no other God but thee, and none that can equal thy Works. Let his Soul rejoice in thy Presence, and remember not his former Iniquities and Excesses, the unhappy Effects of Passion or evil Concupiscence; for altho' he has sinned, he has not renounced the Father, Son, or Holy Ghost; but believed, and had a Zeal for God, and faithfully worshipped him who made all Things.

Remember not, O Lord, we beseech thee, the Sins of his Youth, and his Ignorances; but, according to thy great Mercy, be mindful of him in thy heavenly Glory. May the Heavens be opened to him, and may the Angels rejoice with him. Receive, O Lord, thy Servant into thy Kingdom. Let St. *Michael*, the Archangel of God, conduct him, who is the Chief of the heavenly Host. Let the Holy Angels of God come to meet him, and carry him to the City of the heavenly *Jerusalem*. May St. *Peter* the Apostle receive him, to whom God has given the Keys of the Kingdom of Heaven. May St. *Paul* the Apostle assist him, who was a Vessel of Election. May St. *John* the chosen Apostle of God interceed

interceed for him, to whom were revealed the Secrets of Heaven. May all the Holy Apostles pray for him, to whom our Lord gave the Power of binding and loosing. May all the Saints and Elect of God interceed for him, who in this World have suffered Torments for the Name of *Christ*; that he, being delivered from the Bonds of the Flesh, may deserve to be admitted into the Glory of the Kingdom of Heaven: By the Bounty of our Lord *Jesus Christ*, who, with the Father and the Holy Ghost, liveth and reigneth for ever and ever. *Amen.*

After which, if the sick Person still continues to labour in his Agony, it may be proper, as the Ritual prescribes, to continue reciting other Psalms and Prayers adapted to those Circumstances.

Q. What is the Meaning of the lighting of a Blessed Candle, and keeping it burning during a Person's Agony?

A. This Light represents the Light of Faith in which a Christian dies, and the Light of Glory which he looks for. Besides, these Candles are blessed by the Church, with a solemn Prayer to God to chase away the Devils from those Places where they shall be lighted.

Q. What is the Form of blessing Candles?

A. The *Ritual* prescribes the following Prayer.

V. Our Help is in the Name of our Lord.

R. Who made Heaven and Earth.

Let us Pray.

O Lord *Jesus Christ*, Son of the living God, bless ✠ by our Prayers these Candles; pour forth upon them by the Virtue of the Holy ✠ Cross thy heavenly Benediction, who hast given them to Mankind to chase away Darkness; and may they receive such a Blessing by the Sign of the Holy ✠ Cross, that in what Place soever they shall be lighted or set up, the Rulers of Darkness with all their Ministers

nifters may depart, and trembling fly away from those Dwellings; nor presume any more to disturb or molest those that serve thee, the Almighty God, who livest and reignest for ever and ever. *Amen.*

Q. What is the Meaning of tolling the Passing-Bell when a Person is expiring?

A. To admonish the Faithful to pray for him, that God may grant him a happy Passage.

C H A P. XIII.

Of the Office for the Burial of the Dead.

Q. **W**HAT is the Manner and Order of burying the Dead in the Catholick Church?

A. The Pastor or Parish-Priest, accompanied by his Clericks, goes to the House of the Deceased, and having sprinkled the Body or Coffin with Holy Water, recites the Anthem, *If thou shalt observe Iniquities, O Lord, O Lord who shall sustain it;* with the 129th Psalm, *De Profundis, From the Depths I have cried, &c.* in the End of which he says, *Eternal Rest give to him, O Lord.* R. *And let perpetual Light shine upon him.* Then he repeats the Anthem, *If thou shalt observe Iniquities, &c.*

After this, the Body is carried to the Church, the Clergy going before, two by two, after the Manner of a Procession, and singing the 50th Psalm, *Miserere, Have Mercy on me, O God, according to thy great Mercy, &c.* and the People following the Corpse, and praying in Silence for the Deceased. When they are come to the Church, the Corpse is set down in the Middle of the Church, with the Feet towards the Altar (except the Deceased was a Priest, in which Case the Head is to be towards the Altar) and Wax-Tapers are lighted and set up round the Coffin. Then, if Time and Opportunity

nity permit, is recited the *Dirge*, that is, the Office of the Mattins and Lauds for the Dead, followed by a solemn Mass for the Soul of the Deceased, according to the most ancient Custom of the universal Church.

The *Dirge* and Mass being finished, the Priest, standing at the Head of the Deceased, begins the Office of the Burial as follows.

ENTER not into Judgment with thy Servant, O Lord, for no Man shall be justified in thy Sight, except thou vouchsafe to grant him the Remission of all his Sins. Let not therefore, we beseech thee, the Sentence of thy Judgment fall upon him, whom the true Supplication of Christian Faith recommendeth to thee: But by the Assistance of thy Grace let him escape the Judgment of thy Vengeance, who, whilst he was living, was marked with the Sign of the Holy Trinity; who livest and reignest for ever and ever. Amen.

Then the Choir sings the following Responsory

DELIVER me, O Lord, from eternal Death, at that dreadful Day, when the Heavens and Earth shall be moved, when thou shalt come to judge the World by Fire. V. I am struck with Trembling, and I fear, against the Day of Account, and of the Wrath to come; when the Heavens and Earth shall be moved. V. That great and most bitter Day; when thou shalt come to judge the World by Fire. V. Eternal Rest give to him, O Lord; and let perpetual Light shine upon him. Deliver me, O Lord, &c. as before, till the Verse, I am struck, &c.

Lord have Mercy on us, Christ have Mercy on us, Lord have Mercy on us. Our Father, &c. Here the Priest puts Incense in the Thurible, and then going round the Coffin, sprinkles with Holy Water, and afterwards incenses the Body; and then concludes the Lord's Prayer. V. Lead us not into Tempta-

Temptation. R. *But deliver us from Evil.* V. *From the Gate of Hell.* R. *Deliver his Soul, O Lord.* V. *Let him rest in Peace.* R. *Amen.* V. *O Lord, hear my Prayer.* R. *And let my Cry come to thee.* V. *The Lord be with you.* R. *And with thy Spirit.*

Let us pray.

O God, whose Property is always to shew Mercy, and to spare, we humbly beseech thee for the Soul of thy Servant N. which thou hast this Day commanded to depart out of this World; that thou wouldst not deliver it up into the Hands of the Enemy, nor put it out of thy Memory unto the End; but that thou wouldst order it to be received by the Holy Angels, and conducted to Paradise, its true Country; that since it has believed and hoped in thee, it may not suffer the Pains of Hell, but take Possession of everlasting Joys. Thro' Christ our Lord. Amen.

After this, whilst the Body is carried towards the Place of its Interment, is sung or said the following Anthem.

MAY the Angels conduct thee into Paradise; may the Martyrs receive thee at thy Coming, and bring thee to the Holy City of Jerusalem; may the Choir of Angels receive thee, and mayest thou have eternal Rest with Lazarus, who was formerly poor.

When they are come to the Grave, if it has not been blessed before, the Priest blesses it by the following Prayer; which is the same that we make Use of in this Kingdom, in blessing the Mould or Earth, which we put in the Coffin with the Corpse, in the private Burial-Office.

O God, by whose tender Mercy the Souls of the Faithful find Rest, vouchsafe to bless this Tomb, and depute thy Holy Angel to guard it; and absolve from all the Bonds of Sin the Souls of those whose Bodies are here interred, that with thy Saints they may ever rejoice without End in thee. Thro' Christ our Lord. Amen.

Then

Then the Priest sprinkles with Holy Water, and afterwards incenses both the Corpse of the Deceased and the Grave. Then, whilst the Body is put in the Earth, is sung or said the following Anthem, with the Canticle *Benedictus*, or the Song of *Zacharias*, St. Luke i. 65, &c.

I Am the Resurrection and the Life, he that believeth in me, altho' he be dead, shall live; and every one that liveth and believeth in me, shall not die for ever.
St. John xi. 25.

Or else (as it is the Custom in many Places) when the Body is put in the Earth, the Priest with the Assistants recites the Penitential Psalm, *Miserere*.

Then the Priest says, *Lord have Mercy on us. Christ have Mercy on us. Lord have Mercy on us. Our Father, &c.* [Here he sprinkles the Body with Holy Water] V. *And lead us not into Temptation.* R. *But deliver us from Evil.* V. *From the Gate of Hell.* R. *Deliver his Soul, O Lord.* V. *Let him rest in Peace.* R. *Amen.* V. *O Lord, hear my Prayer.* R. *And let my Cry come unto thee.* V. *The Lord be with you.* R. *And with thy Spirit.*

Let us pray.

GRANT, O Lord, this Mercy to thy Servant deceased, that he (or she) may not receive a Return of Punishment for his (or her) Deeds, who in his (or her) Desires has held fast by thy Will; that as here true Faith has joined him (or her) to the Company of thy Faithful, so thy Mercy there may associate him (or her) to the Choirs of Angels. Thro' Christ our Lord. Amen.

V. *Eternal Rest give to him, O Lord.* R. *And let perpetual Light shine upon him.* V. *Let him rest in Peace.* R. *Amen.* May his Soul, and the Souls of all the Faithful departed, thro' the Mercy of God, rest in Peace.

Then

Then the Priest, returning from the Grave, recites the Psalm *De Profundi*, with the Anthem, *If thou shalt observe Iniquities, O Lord, O Lord who shalt sustain it?*

C H A P. XIV.

Of Prayers for the Dead, and of Purgatory.

2. **W**HAT is the Meaning of Prayers for the Dead?

A. Praying for the Dead is a Practice as ancient as Christianity, received by Tradition from the Apostles, as appears by the most certain Monuments of Antiquity; and observed by the Synagogue, or Church of God, in the *Old Testament*, as appears from 2 *Machab.* xii. written long before *Christ's* Time, and followed by the *Jews* to this Day. A Practice grounded upon Christian Charity, which teaches us to pray for all that are in Necessity, and to implore God's Mercy for all that are capable of Mercy; which we have Reason to be convinced is the Case of many of our deceased Brethren, and therefore we pray for them.

2. How do you prove that the Practice of praying for the Dead is as ancient as Christianity?

A. From *Tertullian*, in his Book *Of the Soldier's Crown*, Chap. 3. written about a hundred Years after the Death of the Apostles; where he reckons the Oblations for the Dead upon their Anniversary-Days amongst the immemorial Traditions observed by all Christians: And in his Book *de Monogamiâ*, Chap. 10. where he affirms it to be the Duty of a Christian Widow to pray for the Soul of her Husband, and to beg a Refreshment for him; and to keep his Anniversaries. See St. Cyprian, *Epist.* 66. *Arnobius*, L. 4. *Eusebius*, L. 4. *de Vitâ Constantini*, C. 71. St. Cyril of

of *Jerusalem*, *Catech. Mystag.* 5. *St. Gregory Nazianzen*, *Orat.* 10, &c. Hence *St. John Chrysostome*, *Hom.* 3. upon the *Epistle to the Philippians*, tell us, that it was ordained by the Apostles that the Dead should be commemorated in the sacred Mysteries; and *St. Augustine*, *Serm.* 32. *de Verbis Apost.* §. 2. that it was a Practice received from the Fathers, and observed by the universal Church. And it appears from *St. Epiphanius*, *Hær.* 75. that *Aerius* was ranked amongst the Hereticks by the Church in the fourth Century, for denying that the Prayers of the Living did the Dead any Good.

Q. Is it any Argument in Favour of Prayers for the Dead, that it was practised by *Judas Machabæus*, and by the *Jews*, before the Coming of *Christ*?

A. Yes, a very great Argument; 1st, Because this Practice is expressly approved in the 12th Chapter of the second Book of *Machabees*; which Books, by many Councils and Fathers, are ranked amongst the divine Scriptures. 2^{dly}, Because the *Jews* in those Days were undoubtedly the People of God. 3^{dly}, Because, as *Dr. Taylor* writes, *Lib. of Prophecyng. Sect.* 20. *Num.* 11. p. 265. "We find by the History of the *Machabees*, that the *Jews* did pray and make Offerings for the Dead (which also appears by other Testimonies, and by their Form of Prayers, still extant, which they used in the Captivity.) Now it is very considerable, that since our Blessed Saviour did reprove all the evil Doctrines and Traditions of the Scribes and Pharisees, and did argue concerning the Dead and the Resurrection, against the Sadduces, yet he spake no Word against this publick Practice, but left it as he found it; which he, who came to declare to us all the Will of his Father, would not have done, if it had not been innocent, pious, and full of Charity."

H

Q. But

2. But what Reasons is there to believe, that our Prayers can be of any Service to the Dead?

A. The same Reason as there is to believe that our Prayers are of Service to the Living; for whether we consult the Scripture, or primitive Tradition, with relation to the Promises or Encouragements given in Favour of our Prayers, we shall no where find the Dead excepted from the Benefit of them; and the perpetual Practice of the Church of God, which is the best Interpreter of the Scripture, has from the very Beginning ever authorized Prayers for the Dead, as believing such Prayers beneficial to them.

2. But are not they that have past this mortal Life arriv'd to an unchangeable State of Happiness or Misery, so that they either want not our Prayers, or cannot be better'd by them?

A. Some there are, tho' I fear but few, that have before their Death so fully cleared up all Accounts with the Divine Majesty, and washed away all their Stains in the Blood of the Lamb, as to go strait to Heaven after Death; and such as those stand not in Need of our Prayers. Others there are, and their Number is very great, who die in the Guilt of deadly Sin; and such as these go strait to Hell, like the rich Glutton in the Gospel, St. Luke xvi. and therefore cannot be better'd by our Prayers. But, besides these two Kinds, there are many Christians, who, when they die, are neither so perfectly pure and clean, as to be exempt from the least Spot or Stain, nor yet so unhappy as to die under the Guilt of unrepented of deadly Sin. Now such as these the Church believes to be, for a Time, in a middle State, which we call *Purgatory*; and these are they who are capable of receiving Benefit by our Prayers. For tho' we pray for all that die in the Communion of the Church, because we don't certainly know the particular State in which each one dies; yet we are sensible

sensible that our Prayers are available for those only that are in this middle State.

Q. But what Grounds have you to believe that there is any such Thing as a *Purgatory*, or middle State of Souls ?

A. We have the strongest Grounds imaginable from all Kind of Arguments ; from Scripture, from perpetual Tradition, from the Authority and Declaration of the Church of God, and from Reason.

Q. What Grounds have you for *Purgatory* from Scripture ?

A. 1st, Because the Scripture teaches us in many Places, that is, the fixed Rule of God's Justice to *render to every man according to his works*. See *Psalm* lxii. 12. *St. Matt.* xvi. 27. *Rom.* ii. 6. *Rev.* xxii. 12, &c. So that, according to the Works which each Man has done in the Time of his mortal Life, and according to the State in which he was found at the Moment of his Departure out of this Life, he shall certainly receive Reward or Punishment from God. Hence it evidently follows, that as by this Rule of God's Justice, they that die in great and deadly Sins, not cancelled by Repentance, will be eternally punished in Hell ; so by the same Rule, they that die in lesser or venial Sins (which is certainly the Case of a great many) will be punished somewhere for a Time, till God's Justice be satisfied ; and this is what we call *Purgatory*.

2^{dly}, Because the Scripture assures us, *Rev.* xxi. 27. that *there shall in no wise enter into the heavenly Jerusalem any thing that defileth, or that is defiled*. So that if the Soul is found to have the least *Spot* or *Stain*, at the Time of her Departure out of this Life, she cannot in that Condition go strait to Heaven. Now how few are there that depart this Life perfectly pure from the Dregs and Stains to which we are ever subject in this State of Mortality ? And yet God forbid that every little Spot or Stain should

condemn the Soul to the everlasting Torments of Hell. Therefore there must be a middle Place for such Souls as die under the lesser Stains.

3dly, Because the Scripture assures us, St. *Matt.* xii. 36. that we are to render an Account hereafter to the Great Judge, even *for every idle Word* that we have spoken; and, consequently, every idle Word, not cancelled here by Repentance, is liable to be punished by God's Justice hereafter. Now no one can think that God will condemn a Soul to Hell for every *idle Word*; therefore there must be another Place of Punishment for those that die guilty of these little Transgressions.

4thly, Because St. *Paul* informs us, *1 Cor.* iii. 13, 14, 15. that *every man's work shall be made manifest* by a fiery Trial; and that they who have built upon the Foundation, which is *Christ*, wood, hay, and stubble (that is, whose Works have been very imperfect and defective, tho' not to the Degree of losing *Christ*) shall suffer loss; but themselves shall be saved, yet so as by fire. Which Place cannot be well explained any otherwise than of the Fire of Purgatory.

5thly, Because our Lord tells us, St. *Matt.* xii. 32. that *whosoever speaketh against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven him, neither in this world, neither in the world to come.* Where our Lord (who could not speak any Thing absurd, or out of the Way) would never have mentioned *Forgiveness in the World to come*, if Sins not forgiven in this World could never be forgiven in the World to come. Now if there may be *Forgiveness* of any Sin whatsoever in the World to come, there must be a middle Place or Purgatory; for no Sin can enter Heaven to be forgiven there, and in Hell there is no *Forgiveness*.

Add to these Texts of Scripture the Prison mentioned St. *Matt.* v. 26. out of which a Man shall

not

not come till he has paid the uttermost farthing; and the Spirits in Prison, to which our Saviour is said to have gone to preach; 1-Pet. iii. 18, 19, 20.

Q. What Grounds have you for *Purgatory* from perpetual Tradition?

A. Because, as we have seen already, the Jewish Church, long before our Saviour's Coming, and the Christian Church from the very Beginning, have offered Prayers and Sacrifice for the Repose and Relief of the Faithful departed, as appears from innumerable Testimonies of the Fathers, and from the most ancient Liturgies of all Christian Churches and Nations, Romans, Greeks, Syrians, Armenians, Nestorians, Egyptians, Ethiopians, Indians, Mosarabes, &c. Which Consent, so ancient and so universal, of all Ages and of all Nations, before the pretended Reformation, is a most convincing Argument that this Practice came by Tradition from the Apostles; and consequently that the Belief of a *Purgatory* is an Apostolick Tradition: For what Sense could there be in praying for the Repose and Relief of the Souls of the Faithful departed, if there were no middle Place, but all went strait to Heaven or Hell?

Q. What Grounds have you for the Belief of a *Purgatory* from the Authority of the Church?

A. Because the Church of *Christ* has declared that there is a *Purgatory*, as well by condemning of old *Aerius* for an Heretick, for denying that the Prayers of the Living did the Dead any Service, as also by the expresse Definitions of her General Councils. Now the Scripture most evidently teaches us, in many Places, that we are to hear and to obey the Church, and that *Christ* and the Holy Ghost will be always with the Church, to guide her into all Truth, and that the Gates of Hell shall not prevail against her. So that what the Church has thus de-

clared can be no Error, but must needs be a most certain Truth.

Q. What Grounds have you for the Belief of a *Purgatory* from Reason?

A. Because Reason teaches these two Things; 1st, That every Sin be it never so small, is an Offence of God, and consequently deserves Punishment from the Justice of God; and therefore that every Person that dies under the Guilt of any such Offence unrepented of, must expect to be punished by the Justice of God. 2^{dly}, That there are some Sins, in which a Person may chance to die, that are so small, either through the Levity of the Matter, or for Want of a full Deliberation in the Act, as not to deserve everlasting Punishments. From whence it plainly follows, that besides the Place of everlasting Punishments, which we call Hell, there must be also a Place of temporal Punishment for such as die in those lesser Offences, and this we call *Purgatory*.

Q. But does not the Blood of *Christ* sufficiently purge us from all our Sins, without any other *Purgatory*?

A. The Blood of *Christ* purges none that are once come to the Use of Reason from any Sin without Repentance; and therefore such Sins, as have not been here recalled by Repentance, must be punished hereafter, according to the established Rule of Divine Justice, either in Hell, if the Sins be mortal; or if venial, in *Purgatory*.

Q. Do you then think that any Repentance can be available after Death?

A. No; but God's Justice must take Place after Death, which will render to every Man according to his Works. So that we don't believe that the Repentance of the Souls that are in *Purgatory*, or any Thing else that they can then do, can cancel their Sins; but they must suffer for them till God's Justice be satisfied.

Q. Are

Q. Are they not then capable of Relief in that State?

A. Yes they are; but not from any Thing that they can then do for themselves, but from the Prayers, Alms, and other Suffrages offered to God for them by the Faithful upon Earth, which God in his Mercy is pleas'd to accept of, by reason of that Communion which we have with them, by being Fellow-Members of the same Body of the Church, under the same Head, which is *Christ Jesus*.

Q. But what do you say to that Text of Scripture, *Eccles. xi. 3. If the tree fall toward the south, or toward the north, in the place where the tree falleth there it shall lie?*

A. I say, that it is no Way evident, that this Text has relation to the State of the Soul after Death; but if it be so understood as to have relation to the Soul, it makes nothing against *Purgatory*; because it only proves what no Catholick denies, viz. that when once a Soul is come to the *South*, or to the *North*, that is, to Heaven or to Hell, its State is unchangeable.

Q. But does not the Scripture promise *Rest* after Death to such as *die in the Lord*? Rev. xiv. 13.

A. Yes, it does; but then we are to understand, that those are said to *die in the Lord*, who *die for the Lord* by Martyrdom; or at least those who at the Time of their Death are so happy as to have no Debts nor Stains to interpose between them and the Lord. As for others who die but imperfectly in the Lord, they shall *rest* indeed from the *Labours* of this World; but as *their Works* that follow them are imperfect, they must expect to receive from the Lord according to their Works.

Q. *Christ* said to the Thief upon the Cross, St. Luke xxiii. *This day thou shalt be with me in paradise*; what Appearance then is there that any one dying in God's Grace should go to *Purgatory*?

A. The Case of this penitent Thief, to whom *Christ* was pleased to give a full Discharge at once of all his Sins, was extraordinary, as his Faith and Confession was extraordinary; and therefore to make a general Rule from this particular Instance is a bad Way of arguing; the more because we have Reason to be convinced that not one in a Thousand dies so perfectly penitent as to be perfectly purged before Death from all the Dregs of Sin, which was the particular Grace granted to this good Thief.

If you ask me what is meant by *Paradise* in that Text, and how the good Thief could be with *Christ* that Day in *Paradise*, before our Lord had taken Possession of Heaven for himself and us, by his Resurrection and Ascension? I answer, that our Lord descending after Death into *Limbo*, to the Holy Fathers, made that Place a *Paradise*, by manifesting his Glory to those happy Souls. And this was the *Paradise* into which he introduced the good Thief immediately after his Death.

C H A P. XV.

Of the Sacrament of Holy Orders.

2. **W**HAT do you mean by the Sacrament of Holy Orders?

A. A Sacrament by which the Ministers of *Christ* are consecrated to their sacred Functions, and receive Grace to discharge them well.

2. How do you prove that Holy Orders are a Sacrament?

Because they are a *visible Sign of invisible Grace*, and that by divine Institution, or by the Ordinance of *Christ*, which alone could annex the Gift of Grace to any outward Rite or Ceremony. The *outward and visible Sign* is found in the Imposition, or

or laying on of the Bishop's Hands, and Prayer : After which Sort we find the seven Deacons ordained, *Acts* vi. 6. and St. Paul and St. Barnabas, *Acts* xiii. 3. The invisible Grace, conferred by this Imposition of Hands, is attested 2 *Tim.* i. 6. *Stir up the grace of God, which is in thee, by the imposition of my hands.* And the divine Institution of Holy Orders is gathered as well from the Use of the Apostles, and the perpetual Tradition of the Church, as from those Texts in which *Christ* bequeathed the whole Power of the Priesthood to his Disciples and to their Successors, St. *Luke* xxii. 19. *Do this in remembrance of me ;* and St. *John* xx. 22, 23. *Receive ye the Holy Ghost : whosoever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them ; and whosoever sins ye retain, they are retained.*

Q. By what Steps do Persons ascend in the Catholick Church to the Order of Priesthood ?

A. 1st, They must be initiated by the *Clerical Tonsure*, which is not properly an Order, but only a Preparation for Orders. The Bishop cuts off the Extremities of their Hair, to signify their renouncing the World and its Vanities ; and he invests them with a Surplice, and so receives them into the Clergy ; they making at the same Time a solemn Profession of taking the Lord for their Inheritance and Portion for ever.

2^{dly}, They must pass through the *minor* or lesser Orders, which have been received from the Primitive Church, viz. the Orders of *Porter*, or Door-keeper of the Church ; *Lector*, or Reader of the Lessons in the Divine Office ; *Exorcist*, whose Function is to read the Exorcisms and Prayers of the Church over those who are possessed or obsessed by the Devil ; and *Acolyth*, whose Function is to serve at Mass, light the Candles in the Church, &c. All these are ordained by receiving from the Bishop the Instruments or Books belonging to their respective

Offices, and by solemn Prayers prescribed in the *Pontifical*.

3dly, From the *minor Orders* they are promoted to the Order of *Sub-deacon*, which is the first of those that are called *Holy*. In the conferring this Order the Bishop puts the Candidates in Mind, that hitherto they have had the Liberty to quit the Ecclesiastical Calling, and engage themselves by Marriage in the World; but if they will be ordained *Sub-deacons*, which he leaves to their Choice, they are thereby tied for ever to the Service of God and his Church in the State of perpetual Continence. *Sub-deacons* also are obliged to the Canonical Hours of the Church-Office; and in the High Mass assist the *Deacon* in his Ministry.

4thly, From the Order of *Sub-deacon* they are advanced to the Order of *Deacon*, which is conferred upon them by the Imposition of the Bishop's Hand, and by delivering to them the Book of the *Gospels*. The *Deacon's* Office is to assist the Bishop or Priest in the Sacrifice of the Mass, to sing and to preach the *Gospel*, to baptize, &c.

5thly, From the Order of *Deacon* the next Ascent is to the Order of *Priest* or *Presbyter*, above which is the Order of *Bishops*, amongst whom the Chief is called the *Pope*.

Q. In what Manner is the Order of Priesthood administer'd?

A. The Person that is to be ordained is presented to the Bishop by the Arch-deacon, desiring, in the Name of the Church, that he may be promoted to Priesthood, and bearing Testimony of his being worthy of that Office. Then the Bishop publishes to the Clergy and People there present the design'd Promotion, that if any one has any Thing to alledge against the Person that is to be ordained, he may freely declare it. If no one appears to alledge any Thing against him, the Bishop proceeds to admonish him of

of the Duties and Functions of the Priesthood, and to exhort him to a diligent Discharge thereof. After which, both the Bishop and the Person that is to be ordained, prostrate themselves in Prayer, whilst the Litanies are sung or said by the Choir or Clergy there present; which being ended, the Bishop stands up, and the Person that is to be ordained kneeling, the Bishop first, and then all the Priests there present, one after another, lay both their Hands on his Head, which Imposition of Hands is immediately followed by the solemn Prayers of Consecration, and by vesting him with the Priestly Ornaments; then the Holy Ghost is invoked by the Hymn *Veni Creator*: After which the Bishop anoints the Hands of the Person ordained, and then delivers into his Hands the Chalice with the Wine and Water, and the Paten with the Bread, saying, *Receive the Power to offer Sacrifice to God and celebrate Mass, as well for the Living as for the Dead, in the Name of the Lord.* Then the Person ordained says Mass with the Bishop, and receives the Holy Communion at his Hands. At the End of the Mass the Bishop again imposes his Hands upon him, saying those Words of Christ, St. John xx. 22, 23. *Receive the Holy Ghost: whose sins thou shalt forgive, they are forgiven them; and whose sins thou shalt retain, they are retained.* After which he receives from him the Promise of Obedience, and gives him the Kiss of Peace,

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Superiority of Bishops, and of the Supremacy of the Pope.

2. **H**OW do you prove, that besides *Priests* or *Presbyters*, there has been always in the Church the Order of *Bishops* superior to that of *Priests*? A. I

A. I prove it both from Scripture and perpetual Tradition. The *New Testament* in several Places mentions Bishops, as *Philip* i. 1. *1 Tim.* iii. 2. *Tit.* i. 7. *Acts* xx. 28. And it is visible, that the Angels of the seven Churches of *Asia*, mentioned in the 1st, 2^d, and 3^d Chapter of the *Revelation*, were the Bishops of those Sees, and accordingly had a Jurisdiction over them. 'Tis no less visible, from the Epistles of St. *Paul* to *Timothy* and *Titus*, that both one and the other were Bishops, with Power of ordaining inferior Priests; and *Timothy* in particular is instructed by the Apostle in what Manner he is to comport himself to the Priests under him, *1 Tim.* v. 17, 19. And as for perpetual Tradition, it is evident, from all Kind of Monuments, and from the most ancient Church-History, that the Church has always been governed by Bishops, and that the Apostles every where established Bishops. Thus St. *Irenæus*, *L. 3. C. 3.* *Tertullian*, *L. de Prescrip.* and other Ancients, assure us, that *Linus* and *Clement* were ordained Bishops by St. *Peter* and St. *Paul* for the See of *Rome*. Thus *Eusebius*, and other ancient Monuments, inform us, that St. *Mark* was the first Bishop of *Alexandria*, and was succeeded by *Anianus*; that *Evodius* and *Ignatius*, Disciples of the Apostles, were, after St. *Peter*, the first Bishops of *Antioch*; that St. *James* was constituted by the Apostles the first Bishop of *Jerusalem*, and had for Successor *Simeon* the Son of *Cleophas*; that St. *Polycarp* was made Bishop of *Smyrna* by St. *John*, &c.

2. How do you prove, that amongst Bishops one should be a Head, and have a Jurisdiction over the rest?

A. Because *Christ* has so appointed, who gave that Pre-eminence to St. *Peter*, with Respect to the rest of the Apostles; as appears from St. *Matt.* xvi. 18, 19. when, in Reward of his Faith and Confession, he confirmed to him the Name of *Peter* or *Rock*; and

and promised to him, that *upon this Rock* he would build his Church, and the Gates of Hell should not prevail against it; and that he would give him the *keys of the kingdom of heaven, &c.* And from St. *John* xxi. 15, &c. when our Lord, after having asked St. *Peter*, *Dost thou love me more than these?* three Times, committed to him the Charge of all his Lambs and Sheep, without Exception; that is, of his whole Church. Hence St. *Matthew*, Chap. x. 2. reckoning the Names of the twelve Apostles, says, *The first, Simon, who is called Peter.* Now it does not appear that he could be said the *first*, upon any other Account but by reason of his Supremacy; for that he was first in Age is more than appears, and that he was first in Calling is not true; for St. *Andrew* came to *Christ* before *Peter*, and was probably the elder Brother; and certain it is, that the Evangelists, in reckoning up the Names of the Apostles upon several Occasions, neither follow the Order of their Age, nor of their Calling; yet always reckon *Peter* in the first Place, and sometimes, more clearly to intimate his Pre eminence, name him alone as Chief or Prince; as St. *Mark* i. 36. *Simon, and they that were with him;* St. *Luke* ix. 32. *Peter, and they that were with him* St. *Luke* ix. *Peter standing up with the eleven;* Acts v. 29. *Peter and the Apostles answered and said, &c.* where the Protestant Translation has foisted in the Word *other Apostles*, as clearly seeing that the former Expression (which is that of the Original) too clearly expressed St. *Peter's* being something more than the rest.

'Tis also worth observing, that our Lord was pleas'd to teach the People out of *Peter's* Ship, St. *Luke* v. 3. that he ordered the same Tribute to be paid for himself and *Peter*, St. *Matt.* xvii. 27. that he particularly prayed for *Peter* that his Faith should not fail, and ordered him to confirm or strengthen his Brethren, St. *Luke* xxii. 32, &c.

Hence

Hence *St. Peter's* Supremacy is acknowledged by the perpetual Tradition of the Holy Fathers. See *Origen* on the 6th Chapter to the *Romans*, and in the 5th *Homily* upon *Exodus*; *St. Basil* of the *Judgment of God*, T. 2. p. 402; *St. Cyril* of *Jerusalem*, in his 2d *Catechesis*; *St. Epiphanius*, *Hær.* 51. §. 17. & *Hær.* 54. §. 7. and in his *Anchoratus*, §. 6. p. 12, 15; *St. John Chrysostome* in his 2d *Homily* on the 50th *Psalms*, in his 54th *Homily* upon *St. Matthew*, &c. *St. Cyril* of *Alexandria*, in his 12th Book upon *St. John*; *St. Asterius*, Bishop of *Amasea*, in his Sermon upon *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*; and among the *Latins*, *St. Cyprian*, *Epist.* 70. to *Januarius*; *St. Optatus* of *Milevis*, L. 2 and 7; *St. Ambrose*, L. 10. upon *St. Luke*; *St. Hierome*, in his 1st Book against *Jovinian*; *St. Augustine*, L. 2. de *Baptismo*, C. 1; *St. Leo*, *Epist.* 48. to *Anastasius*; *St. Gregory the Great*, L. 4. *Epist.* 32, &c.

Q. How do you prove that *St. Peter* was to have a Successor in this Office of Chief Bishop of the Church?

A. Because as *Christ* establish'd his Church to remain till the End of the World, *St. Matt.* xxviii. 20. so most certainly he designed that the Form of Government which he established in his Church should remain for ever. Hence, supposing the Supremacy of *St. Peter*, which we have proved above from Scripture, it cannot be questioned, but that our Lord designed that this Supremacy, which he appointed for the better Government of his Church, and the preserving of Unity, should not die with *Peter*, no more than the Church (with which he promised to remain for ever) but should descend, after *Peter's* Decease, to his Successors. For it is not to be imagined, that *Christ* should appoint a chief Bishop for the Government of his Church, and maintaining Unity in the Apostles Time, and design another Kind of Government for succeeding Ages,

Ages, when there was like to be so much greater Danger of Schism, and consequently so much greater Need of *one Head* to preserve all in one Faith and one Communion.

2. But how do you prove that the Pope or Bishop of *Rome* is this Successor of *St. Peter*?

A. I prove it, 1st, Because the Church never acknowledged any other for her chief Pastor; and no other does, or ever did, put in a Claim to the spiritual Supremacy, in Quality of *St. Peter's* Successor: So that, supposing what has been proved, that *Christ* appointed a chief Pastor for his Church, the Bishop of *Rome* must be the Man.

2^{dly}, I prove it from the current Sense of the Holy Fathers and Councils that have acknowledged this Supremacy in the See of *Rome* and her Bishops. See *St. Ignatius*, Disciple of the Apostles, in the Beginning of his Epistle to the *Romans*, where he calls the Church of *Rome* the *presiding Church*; *St. Irenaeus*, L. 3. C. 3. who calls the same the *greatest and most ancient Church, founded by the two most glorious Apostles Peter and Paul*; and adds, that all *Sec-taries* are confounded by the *Roman Tradition*: *For to this Church, by reason of its MORE POWERFUL PRINCIPALITY, says he, it is necessary that every Church resort, or have recourse; in which (Church) the Apostolical Tradition has always been preserved by those that are in every Place*; and *St. Cyprian*, in his 55th Epistle to Pope *Cornelius*, where he calls the See of *Rome*, *The Chair of Peter, and the principal Church from which the Priestly Unity has its Origin*. *Ecclesiam Principalem, unde Unitas Sacerdotalis ex-orta est.*

See also *St. Optatus*, Bishop of *Milevis*, in his 2^d Book against *Parmenianus*, the *Donatist* Bishop of *Carthage*; where he thus addresses himself to his Adversary: *You cannot pretend to be ignorant that Peter held first the Bishop's Chair in the City of Rome, in which*
Peter

Peter Head of all the Apostles sat — in which one Chair Unity might be maintained by all, lest the rest of the Apostles should each one claim his own separate Chair. So that he is now a Schismatick and an Offender, who against this single Chair erects any other. In this one Chair, which is the first of the Properties of the Church, Peter first sat; to him succeeded Linus, to him Clement, &c. Give you now an Account of the Origin of your Chair, you who claim to yourselves the whole Church.

And St. Jerome, writing to Pope Damascus, *Epist.* 56. tells him, *I am joined in Communion with your Holiness, that is, with the Chair of Peter: Upon that Rock I know the Church is built: Whoever eats the Lamb out of this House is profane; whosoever is not in (this) Ark shall perish in the Deluge, &c.*

And St. Augustine, in his Psalm against the Donatists, thus addresses himself to these Schismaticks: Come, Brethren, says he, if you have a Mind to be engrafted in the Vine. 'Tis a Pity to see you lie lopped off in this Manner from the Stock. Reckon up the Prelates in the very See of Peter; and in that Order of Fathers see which has succeeded which. This is the Rock over which the proud Gates of Hell prevail not. And in his 162d Epistle he tells the Donatists, that in the See of Rome the Principality (or Supremacy) of the Apostolick Chair was ever acknowledged. *Semper Apostolicæ Cathedræ viguit Principatus.*

And St. Prosper, in his dogmatic Poem against the Enemies of Grace, calls Rome, *The See of Peter, which being made to the World the Head of Pastoral Dignity, rules by Religion all that which she possesses not by her Arms.* And to the same Effect St. Leo the Great, in his first Sermon upon St. Peter and St. Paul, thus addresses himself to Rome: *These are they who have advanced thee to this Glory, that being made the Head of the World, by being St. Peter's See, thou hast a wider Extent of Religious Empire than of Earthly*

Ear
hast
Lan
of t
subj
hith
after
T
been
by t
of D
Gen
Leo,
tinop
Not
cils,
the
rence
in th
has c
over
but
Gosp
build
2
Age,
Supr
A.
diatel
Centr
(ἀρχή)
Easter
Eccl.
the R
no or
Autho
In the
to Pop

Earthly Dominion. For tho' by thy many *Victories* thou hast extended thy *Dominion* far and near by *Sea* and *Land*, yet that which has been subdued by the *Labour* of thy *Arms* is not so much as that which has been made subject to thee by *Christian Peace*. All these *Fathers* hitherto quoted flourished within four hundred Years after the *Passion of Christ*.

The *Supremacy* of the *Bishops of Rome* has also been acknowledged by many *General Councils*; as by the *General Council of Ephesus*, in the *Sentence of Deposition* against *Nestorius*, *Anno 431*; by the *General Council of Chalcedon*, in their *Epistle to St. Leo*, *Anno 451*; by the *General Council of Constantinople*, *Anno 680*, in their *Epistle to Pope Agatho*: Not to mention the *Decrees* of later *General Councils*, especially the fourth of *Lateran*, *Anno 1215*; the second of *Lyons*, *Anno 1274*; and that of *Florence*, *Anno 1439*. Tho' as *Pope Gelasius*, long ago, in the *Council of Rome* of seventy *Bishops*, *Anno 494*, has declared, *The Roman See hath not its Pre-eminence over other Churches from any Ordinances of Councils, but from the Words of our Lord and Saviour in the Gospel, Thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church, &c.*

Q. But has the *Pope or Bishop of Rome* in every Age, since the *Days of the Apostles*, exercised this *Supremacy* over other *Churches*?

A. Yes, most certainly: In the very Age immediately after the *Apostles*, that is, in the second Century, *Pope Victor* threaten'd to excommunicate (*ἀποκόμην*) the *Bishops of Asia Minor*, for keeping *Easter* at an undue Time, *Eusebius*, L. 5. *Histor. Eccl. C. 24*. And tho' 'tis probable he relented upon the *Remonstrances* of *St. Irenæus* and others, yet no one of them all charged him with usurping an Authority which did not of Right belong to him. In the third Century, *St. Cyprian*, *Epist. 67*. wrote to *Pope Stephen*, desiring him to dispatch his Letters into

into the Province and to the People of *Arles*, by which they might be authorized to depose *Marcianus* the Bishop of *Arles*, and substitute another in his Place. *Dirigantur in Provinciam — à te literæ, quibus abſtento Marciano, alius in locum ejus ſubſtituatur.*

In the fourth Century, Pope *Julius* cited St. *Athanasius*, Bishop of *Alexandria*, that is to ſay, the ſecond Patriarch of the Church, to his Council at *Rome*, to answer the Accuſations of his Adverſaries; who accordingly did appear, and was there cleared. See St. *Athanasius's* *Apology againſt the Arians*, Num. 29. p. 148. of the new Edition; and *Theodoret*, L. 2. *Hiſtor. C.* 3. The ſame Pope, as we learn from the Hiſtorian *Socrates*, L. 2. C. 15. and *Sozomenus*, L. 3. C. 8. about the ſame Time reſtored by his Authority to their reſpective Sees, from whence they had been depoſed by the *Eusebians*, St. *Paul* Bishop of *Conſtantinople*, St. *Lucius* Bishop of *Adrianople*, *Marcellus* Bishop of *Ancyra* in *Galatia*, and *Aſclepas* Bishop of *Gaza* in *Paleſtine*; and this, as *Sozomenus* expreſſy words it, *becauſe, by reaſon of the Dignity of his See, the Care of all belonged to him.* In the fifth Century, Pope *Celeſtine* deputed St. *Cyril*, Patriarch of *Alexandria*, to proceed as his Delegate to the Excommunication of *Nectorius* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, Tom. 3. *Concil. Labbe*, p. 349. And in the ſame Century St. *John Chryſoſtome* and St. *Flavian*, both Patriarchs of *Conſtantinople*, unjuſtly depoſed by numerous Councils in the *Eaſt*, appealed from their Judgment, the one to Pope *Innocent I.* the other to Pope *Leo the Great.* See the Epiſtle of St. *John Chryſoſtome* to Pope *Innocent*, and the 23d Epiſtle of St. *Leo.* In the ſixth Century, Pope *Agapetus* depoſed *Anthymus* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*; not to mention many other Inſtances in all theſe Centuries of the Exerciſe of the Pope's Jurisdiction

jurisdiction over other Churches; and as for the following Ages there is no Dispute.

From all which it follows, that the Protestant Pretence of the Pope's having received his Supremacy from *Phocas* the Emperor of *Constantinople*, who began to reign *Anno 602*, is a groundless Fiction, like the idle Tale of Pope *Joan*.

Q. But does not our Lord intimate, *St. Luke* xxii. 24, 25, 26. that amongst his Disciples none should be the Chief or Head?

A. No: But only that *he that is the greatest should be as the younger, and he that is CHIEF as he that doth serve*, ver. 26. Which Words, so far from denying, evidently suppose a *Chief*; which is farther confirmed by our Lord's alledging himself for an Example in the following Verse, who was most certainly *Chief*. So that what is here recommended is not Equality of Jurisdiction, but Humility in Superiors.

Q. But does not *St. Paul* say, *2 Cor. xii. 11. In nothing am I behind the very chiefest Apostles, tho' I be nothing*; where was then *St. Peter's* Supremacy?

A. 'Tis visible, that *St. Paul* speaks with regard to his *Labours, Miracles and Doctrine*, in which he was inferior to none; but whether *St. Peter* or he had a superior Jurisdiction, was foreign to the Matter he had then in hand, and therefore no Wonder that he takes no Notice of it.

Q. If *St. Peter* was Head, how came *St. Paul* to withstand him to his Face at *Antioch*? *Gal. ii. 11.*

A. Because, as the Apostle tells us in the same Place, *he was to blame*, viz. in withdrawing himself from the Table of the *Gentiles*, for fear of giving Offence to the *Jews*: And this it was that *St. Paul* reprehended, because of the Danger of the *Gentiles* taking Scandal thereby. But this no Way disproves *St. Peter's* Superiority, since no one doubts but

but that a Superior, when in Fault, may sometimes lawfully be reprehended by an inferior.

And after all, do our Adversaries imagine, that the enhancing the Dignity and Authority of *St. Paul* makes any Thing against the Bishop of *Rome*, who indeed inherits the Succession both of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*, who both honoured *Rome* with their Preaching and with their Death?

2. But some Protestants doubt whether *St. Peter* ever was at *Rome*; what say you to this?

A. Grotius, a learned Protestant, writes, that *no Christian ever doubted but St. Peter was at Rome*. In *Synopsi Criticorum*, p. 1540. H. And *Chamierus*, another learned Protestant, tells us, that *all the Fathers with great Accord have asserted that Peter went to Rome and govern'd that Church*. Omnes Patres magno consensu asseruerunt Petrum Romam esse profectum, eamque Ecclesiam administrasse, L. 13. C. 4. §. 2. And *Dr. Pearson*, the Protestant Bishop of *Chester*, one of the most eminent Men that the Reformation has ever produced, has demonstrated, by innumerable Arguments, that *Peter* was at *Rome*, and that the Bishops of *Rome* are his Successors. See *Pearson's Opera Posthuma*, printed at *London*, Anno 1688, p. 27, &c.

2. Does the Scripture any where affirm that *St. Peter* was at *Rome*?

A. St. Peter's first Epistle seems to affirm it, *Chap. v. 13.* where by *Babylon* the best Interpreters understand *Rome*, so called by the Apostle, as afterwards by *St. John* in the *Apocalypse*, because of its being then the chief Seat both of the Empire and of heathenish Idolatry, as formerly *Babylon* had been. And so this Place is understood by *S. Papias*, Disciple of the Apostles, and *Clement of Alexandria*, alledged by *Euseb. L. 2. Hist. C. 15.* and by *St. Hierome, L. de Scriptor in Marco*; by venerable *Bede, OEcumenius*, and others. Nor is there any Probability that

that the *Babylon* here mentioned could be that in *Chaldaea*, which at this Time was nothing but a Heap of Ruins; nor that in *Egypt*, which was but a very inconsiderable Place in those Days, and in which no Monuments of Antiquity give us the least Hint that St. *Peter* ever preached.

But if the Scripture had been entirely silent in this Matter, we have it proved by universal Tradition, which is the Means by which we come to the Knowledge of the Scripture itself. And indeed there is a more universal Tradition for St. *Peter's* being at *Rome*, than there is for many Parts of the Scripture which Protestants receive: For whereas many of the ancient Fathers have called in Question some Books of Scripture; for instance, the *Revelation*, the *Epistle to the Hebrews*, &c. and there is scarce any Part of the Bible or *New Testament* but what has been rejected by some Hereticks of old; yet we cannot find that St. *Peter* being at *Rome* was ever called in Question by any single Man, Infidel or Christian, Catholick or Heretick, for thirteen or fourteen hundred Years after *Christ*. Tho' all Hereticks and Schismatics, as being always Enemies to the Church of *Rome*, would have been most glad to have called in Question this Succession of St. *Peter* (which the Bishops of *Rome* ever gloried in) had not the Matter of Fact been out of dispute.

The ancient Fathers that have attested St. *Peter's* being at *Rome*, besides many others, are, St. *Irenæus*, L. 3. C. 3. St. *Denys*, Bishop of *Corinth*, *Caius* and *Origen*, alledged by *Eusebius* in his *Church-History*, p. 71, 78; *Tertullian*, L. de *Præscript*. C. 36. and in *Scorpiaco*, C. 5. St. *Cyprian*, *Epist*. 52. and 55; *Arnobius*, L. 2. contra *Gentes*; *Lactantius*, L. de *Morte Persecutorum*, C. 2; *Eusebius*, L. 2. *Hist*. C. 14. p. 52. L. 3. C. 4. p. 74; St. *Athanasius*, in *Apolog. de fuga sua*, p. 331; St. *Cyril of Jerusalem*, *Catech*. 6. p. 54; St. *Ambrose*, L. 4. *Hexam*. C. 8.

C. 8; St. Jerome de Scriptoribus Eccles. in Petro & in Marco, and in his Chronicon ad Annum 43 & 69; Sulpitius Servus, L. 2. Hist. St. Augustine, L. de Hær. C. 1. Epist. 53. L. 2. contra Lit. Petil. C. 51; St. John Chrysostome, Tom. 5. Hom. 12; Orosius, L. 7. C. 6. St. Peter Chrysologus, Epist. ad Eutyech. St. Optatus, L. 2. contra Parmenian. Theodoret. in Epist. ad Rom. & L. 1. Hæret. Fab. C. 1, &c.

C H A P. XVII.

Of the Celibacy of the Clergy.

2. **W**HAT is the Reason why the Catholick Clergy are not allowed to marry?

A. Because, at their entering into Holy Orders, they make a solemn Promise to God and the Church to live continently. Now the Breach of such a Promise as this would be a great Sin; witness *St. Paul, 1 Tim. v. 11, 12.* where speaking of Widows that are for marrying, after they have thus engaged themselves to God, he says, *they have damnation, because they have cast off their first faith; that is, their solemn Engagement made to God.*

2. But why does the Church receive none to Holy Orders but such as are willing to make this solemn Engagement?

A. Because she does not think it proper that they who by their Office and Functions ought to be wholly devoted to the Service of God, and the Care of Souls, should be diverted from these Duties by the Distractions of a married Life, *1 Cor. vii. 32, 33.* *He that is unmarried, careth for the things that belong to the Lord, how he may please the Lord: but he that is married, careth for the things that are of the world, how he may please his wife.*

2. But

Q. But was it always a Law in the Church that the Clergy should abstain from Marriage?

A. It always was a Law in the Church that Bishops, Priests and Deacons should not marry after having received Holy Orders; and we have not one Example, in all Antiquity, either in the *Greek* or *Latin* Church, of any such Marriage: But it has been at some Times, and in some Places, as at present among the *Greeks*, permitted for Priests and Deacons to continue with their Wives which they had married before their Ordination; tho' even this was disallowed by many ancient Canons.

The 27th of the *Apostolick Canons* allows none of the Clergy to marry but those that are in the minor Orders, that is, *Lectors* and *Cantors*. The Council of *Neo-caesarea*, which was more ancient than that of *Nice*, in its first Canon, orders, that if a Priest marries he should be deposed. The Council of *Ancyra*, which was held about the same Time, orders the same Thing with regard to Deacons, except they protested at the Time of their Ordination that they could not live unmarried, and were therefore presumed to be dispensed with by the Bishop. *Council. Ancyra. Can. 10.*

The Great Council of *Nice*, in the third Canon, forbids Clergymen to have any Woman in their House, except it be Mother, Sister, or Aunt, &c. A Caution, which would never have been thought on, if they had been allowed to have Wives.

In the *West*, the Council of *Illiberis*, which was held about the Close of the third Century, Canon 33, commands Bishops, Priests, Deacons and Sub-deacons to abstain from their Wives, under Pain of Degradation. The second Council of *Arles*, Can. 2. ordains, that no married Man be made Priest, unless he promise Conversion, that is, to live continently. The second Council of *Garthage*, Can. 2. ordains, that Bishops, Priests and Deacons, should live continually,

nently, and abstain from their Wives; and this because the Apostles so taught, and all Antiquity observed. *Ut quod Apostoli docuerunt, & ipsa servavit antiquitas, nos quoque custodiamus.* And the fifth Council of *Carthage*, Anno 398. *Can. 2.* ordains, in like Manner, that all Bishops, Priests and Deacons should abstain from their Wives, or be deposed. There are many other ancient *Canons* to the like Effect, as well as Decrees of the ancient Popes; as of *Siricius*, in his Epistle to *Himmerius*, Bishop of *Tarragona*, *C. 7*; of *Innocent I.* in his Epistle to *Victricius*, Bishop of *Roan*, *C. 9*; of *St. Leo the Great*, *Epist. 82.* to *Anastasius*, *C. 3.* and *4.*

Hence *St. Epiphanius*, who flourished in the *East* in the fourth Century, in his great Work against all Heresies, *Har. 59.* writes thus: “The Church does not admit him to be a Deacon, Priest, Bishop, or Sub-deacon, tho’ he be a Man of one Wife, who makes Use of conjugal Embraces.” He adds, that this, “is observed in those Places chiefly in which the *Canons* of the Church are exactly kept, which being directed by the Holy Ghost, aims always at that which is most perfect; that those who are employed in divine Functions may have as little as can be of worldly Distractions.” And *St. Jerome*, *Epist. 50.* Bishops (says he) Priests and Deacons are chosen either Virgins or Widowers, or from the Time of their Priesthood perpetually chaste.” He affirms the same in his Book against *Vigilantius*, by Name of the Churches of the *East*, and of *Egypt*, and of the *See Apostolick*; and of all Bishops, in his Book against *Jovinianus*. See also *Origen*, *Hom. 13.* upon *Numbers*; *Eusebius*, *L. 1.* *Demonstr. Evang. C. 9*; and *St. John Chrysostome*, *Homil. de Patientia Job.*

If you ask the Reason, why the Church has insisted so much in all Ages upon this Point of Discipline?

pline? Besides the Reason alledged above out of St. Paul, 1 Cor. vii. 32, 33. "The Reason of single Life for the Clergy," says Mr. Thorndike, an eminent Protestant Divine, in his Letters at the End of *Just Weights and Measures*, p. 239. "is firmly grounded by the Fathers and Canons of the Church upon the Precept of St. Paul, forbidding Man and Wife to part, unless for a Time to attend unto Prayer, 1 Cor. 7. 5. For Priests and Deacons being continually to attend upon Occasions of celebrating the Eucharist, which ought continually to be frequented; if others be to abstain from the Use of Marriage for a Time, then they always." Thus far Mr. Thorndike.

Q. But were not the Apostles married?

A. Some of them were, before they were called to the Apostleship; but we don't find that they had any Commerce with their Wives after they were called by Christ. St. Jerome expressly affirms that they had not, *Epist.* 50. And this seems to be clear from St. Matt. xix. 27. where St. Peter says to our Lord, *Behold we have forsaken ALL THINGS, and followed thee.* For that amongst the *all* which they had forsook, *Wives* also were comprehended, is gathered from the Enumeration made by our Saviour in the 29th Verse, where he expressly nameth *Wives*.

Q. But does not St. Paul say, 1 Cor. ix. 5. *Have we not power to lead about a sister [A WIFE] as well as other apostles, &c?*

A. The Protestant Translation has wilfully corrupted the Text in this Place; it should have been translated *a woman, a sister.* The Apostle speaks not of his Wife; for 'tis visible he had none, from 1 Cor. vii. 7, 8. But he speaks of such pious Women, as, according to the Custom of the Hebrew Nation, waited upon the Apostles and other Teachers, serving them in Necessaries; as they had done also upon our Lord in the Time of his mortal Life.

See St. *Luke* viii. 2, 3. Tho' St. *Paul*, that he might be less burthenfome to the Faithful, chose rather to serve himself, and live by the Work of his own Hands.

Q. Does not the Apostle, *1 Tim.* iii. 2. and 12. require that Bishops and Deacons should be *the husbands of one wife*?

A. The Meaning of the Apostle is not that every Bishop, Priest or Deacon should have a Wife; for he himself had none; and he declares, *1 Cor.* vii. 8. *I say to the unmarried and widows, it is good for them if they abide even as I.* But his Meaning is, that none should be admitted to be a Bishop, Priest or Deacon, that had been married more than once; which Law has ever since been observed in the Catholick Church: For since it was not possible in those Days of the first Preaching of the Gospel (when there were few or no Converts, either among the *Jews* or *Gentiles*, but such as were married) to have found a sufficient Number of proper Ministers, if they had not admitted married Men, they were consequently obliged to admit such to the Ministry; but still with this Limitation, provided they had not been twice married. But now the Church has a sufficient Number of such as are trained up to a single Life, and are willing to embrace perpetual Continence; and therefore prefers such to the Ministry, and is authorised so to do by the Apostle, *1 Cor.* vii. 32, 33, 38. And if, after having consecrated themselves to God in this Kind of Life, they should be for looking back, and engaging in a married Life, they are expressly condemned by the same Apostle, *1 Tim.* v. 12.

Q. Is it not said, *Heb.* xiii. 5. *Marriage is honourable in all*?

A. The Protestant Translation has strained the Text to make it say more than the Original, which may full as well be render'd in the Imperative Mood,

Mood, thus: *Let marriage be honourable in all, and the bed undefiled; for whoremongers and adulterers God will judge.* Τίμιος ὁ γάμος ἐν πᾶσι, καὶ ἡ κοίτη ἀμίαντος &c. In the same Manner, as in the following Verse, ἀφιλάργυρος ὁ τρόπος, &c. which is render'd in the Protestant Translation by the Imperative, *Let your conversation be without covetousness, &c.* So that the true Meaning of this Text is, that married Persons should not dishonour their holy State by any Liberties contrary to the Sanctity of it; but not to allow Marriage to those who have chosen the better Part, and consecrated themselves by Vow to God.

Q. But is not *forbidding Marriage* called a Doctrine of Devils, 1 Tim. iv. 3?

A. It certainly was so in those of whom the Apostle there speaks, viz. the *Gnosticks*, the *Marcionites*, the *Encratites*, the *Manicheans*, and many other Hereticks, who absolutely condemned Marriage as the Work of the Devil. For our Parts, no-body reverences Marriage more than we do; for we hold it to be a Sacrament, and forbid it to none but to those that have voluntarily renounced it, to consecrate themselves more wholly to the Divine Service: And in such as these St. Paul condemns it as much as we; see 1 Tim. v. 12. N. B. That these same Hereticks also condemned absolutely the Use of all Kinds of Meat, not on Fasting-days only (as was always practised by the Church) but at any Time whatsoever; because they looked upon all Flesh to be from an evil Principle. So that is evident these were the Men of whom the Apostle, 1 Tim. iv. intended to speak.

Q. But do you think that a Vow of Continency so strictly obliges any Person, that it would be a Sin in such a Person to marry?

A. Yes most certainly? because the Law of God and Nature requires that we should keep our Vows to God, Deut. xxiii. 21, 22, 23. *When thou shalt*

vow a vow unto the Lord thy God, thou shalt not slack to pay it : for the Lord thy God will surely require it of thee ; and it would be sin in thee. But if thou shalt forbear to vow, it shall be no sin in thee. That which is gone out of thy lips thou shalt keep and perform. Psalm lxxvi. 11. *Vow and pay unto the Lord your God.* Eccles. v. 4. *Pay that which thou hast vowed. Better is it that thou shouldst not vow, than that thou shouldst vow and not pay.* For if it be a Crime to break our Faith with Man, how much more with God ? If you say, that the State of Continency is not more acceptable to God than that of Marriage, and therefore cannot be the proper Matter of a Vow, you contradict the Doctrine of the Apostle, 1 Cor. vii. 38. *He that giveth his virgin in marriage, doth well ; but he that giveth her not, doth better.*

Hence St. Augustine, *L. de Bono Viduitatis, C. 11.* affirms, that the Breach of such a Vow of Chastity is worse than Adultery ; and St. John Chrysostome [*ad Theodorum Lapsum*] Tho' you call it marriage a thousand times, yet I maintain 'tis as much worse than Adultery, as God is better and greater than Mortals. Hence the Council of Illiberis, *Can. 13.* the fourth Council of Carthage, *Can. 104.* and the great Council of Chalcedon, *Can. 15.* excommunicate those who presume to marry after such a Vow. What would the Church of those Ages have thought of a Religion introduced into the World by Men that had notoriously broke through these most solemn Engagements, and who raised the Fabrick of their pretended Reformation upon Thousands of broken Vows ?

2. But all have not the Gift of Continency ; why then should the first Reformers be blamed, if, finding they had not this Gift, they ventured upon marrying with Nuns ?

A. Continency is not required of all, but of such as have by Vow engaged to keep it ; and therefore, before

before a Person engages himself by Vow, he ought certainly to examine whether he has a Call from God, and whether he can go through with what he thinks of undertaking: But after he has once engaged himself by Vow, he is not now at Liberty to go back; but may assure himself, that the Gift of Continency will not be denied him, if he uses proper Means to obtain and preserve it, particularly Prayer and Mortification; which, because *Luther* laid aside, by quitting his Canonical Hours of Prayer and other Religious Exercises, to which he had been accustomed in his Convent, no Wonder if he lost the Gift of Continency, which he owns he enjoy'd whilst he was a Popish Friar. "Whilst I was a Religious (says he) I observed Chastity, Obedience and Poverty; and, in short, being wholly disengaged from the Cares of this present Life, I wholly gave myself up to Fasting, Watching and Prayer." In *Gal. 1. 15. T. 5. Witemb. Fol. 291, 2.* But as soon as he commenced Reformer, to demonstrate that he was changed for the worse, he declares, he had so far lost this Gift, that he could not possibly live without a Woman. *Sermon de Matrim. T. 5. Fol. 119. 1.*

Q. But does not *Christ* say concerning Continency, *St. Matt. xix. 11. All men CANNOT receive this saying*; and *St. Paul, 1 Cor. vii. 9. If they CANNOT contain, let them marry; for it is better to marry than to burn?*

A. No: Both those Texts are wilfully corrupted in the Protestant Testament. In the Original, *St. Matt. xix. 11. Christ* does not say, *All men CANNOT receive this saying*; but he says, *All men receive not this saying*: *ὅτι πάντες χωρεῖσι τὸν λόγον τούτον.* And *St. Paul, 1 Cor. vii. 9.* does not say, *If they CANNOT contain, let them marry*: But he says, *If they DO NOT contain, εἰ δὲ ἔκ ἐγκρατεῖονται γαμησάτωσαν, let them marry.* Where he speaks not of such as have

vowed Chastity, but of other Christians, whom he advises rather to marry than to burn *with* unlawful Lust here, and *for* unlawful Lust hereafter. And the same Advice is most frequently inculcated by Catholick Divines. But as for those that have vowed Chastity, they must make Use of other Means to prevent this Burning, particularly Prayer and Fasting. But what a wretched Case must that of the Adversaries of the Celibacy of the Clergy be, when to maintain it they have in so many Places wilfully corrupted the Scripture? And what a melancholy Case it must be, that so many Thousands of well-meaning Souls should be wretchedly deluded with the Pretence of God's pure Word, when instead of this they have nothing put in their Hands but corrupted Translations, which present them with a mortal Poison instead of the Food of Life?

Of Religious Orders and Confraternities.

C H A P. XVIII.

2. **W**HAT is the Meaning of so many Religious Orders in the Catholick Church, under different Denominations; are not all Catholicks of the same Religion?

A. Yes certainly, all Catholicks, and consequently all these Religious, tho' called by different Denominations, are all of one Religion, professing one and the same Faith, acknowledging one and the same Church-Authority, and all the Decisions of the Church; subject to one and the same Head, and closely united together in one Communion.

2. In what then do these *Religious Orders* differ one from another, if they are all of one Religion?

A. They differ in having different Rules and Constitutions prescribed by their respective Founders; different

different Habits ; different Exercises of Devotion and Penance ; different Institutes ; some wholly sequester'd from the World, and addicted to Prayer and Contemplation ; others employed in preaching, teaching, and converting Souls ; others tending the Sick, redeeming Captives, &c. so as to make a beautiful Variety in the Church of God of different Companies, all tending towards Christian Perfection, tho' by different Exercises, according to the Spirit of their respective Institutes.

Q. Are not all these Religious consecrated to God by certain Vows ?

A. Yes: There are three Vows which are common to them all, viz. of *Poverty*, *Chastity*, and *Obedience*. By the Vow of *Poverty* they renounce all Propriety to the Things of this World, so as to have nothing at their own Disposal ; by the Vow of *Chastity* they renounce all carnal Pleasures ; and by the Vow of *Obedience* they give up their own Will to follow that of God in the Person of their Superior.

Q. How do we know that this *voluntary Poverty*, *perpetual Chastity*, and *entire Obedience*, are agreeable to God ?

A. That *voluntary Poverty*, or renouncing the Goods and Possessions of this World, is agreeable to God, is evident from St. Matt. xix. 21. *If thou wilt be perfect, go and sell all thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have a treasure in heaven ; and come and follow me.* That *perpetual Chastity* is agreeable to God, is no less evident from St. Matt. xix. 12. *There be eunuchs which have made themselves eunuchs for the kingdom of heaven's sake : he that is able to receive it, let him receive it.* And that an *entire Obedience* to lawful Superiors must needs be agreeable to his Divine Majesty, is evident, because *Obedience is better than Sacrifice* ; since by Obedience we give up to God, and for God, that which is natu-

turally most dear to us, *viz.* our Liberty; and that which stands most in the Way of our Soul's Welfare, *viz.* our own Will and Self-love.

Q. Ought any Christians to embrace this State of Life without a Call from God?

A. No, certainly; it would be Rashness to attempt it.

Q. How shall any Person know if ye have a Call from God to this State of Life.

A. By consulting God, his Director, and his own Heart. In chusing a State of Life every one ought to consult God, in the first Place, by fervent Prayer, begging daily of him, like the Convert *St. Paul*, *Acts ix. 6. Lord, what wilt thou have me do?* He ought also to consult with a virtuous and prudent *Director*, and to lay open to him the Inclinations of his *Heart*, and the Motives upon which he is inclined to embrace this Kind of Life; for there is no better Proof of a Call from God, than when a Person, after having consulted God by Prayer, finds in himself a strong Inclination to a Religious Life, and that for a long Time, and upon Motives which have nothing in them of Self-love, but are such as could not be suggested but by the Grace of God.

Q. What are the Motives upon which a Christian should embrace a Religious Life?

A. To do Penance for his Sins; to fly from the Dangers and Corruptions of this wicked World; to consecrate himself wholly to the Service of God, and sanctify himself by the exact Observance of his Vows, and all the Exercises of a Religious Life; and to tend without ceasing to Christian Perfection.

Q. But may it not be feared, that young Persons may too rashly engage themselves by Vows in a Religious State for which they are not fit?

A. To prevent this Inconvenience, the Catholick Church suffers none to be professed in any Order of Men

Men or Women without a Year's Noviceship, by Way of Probation or Trial.

Q. Is a Religious State of Life very ancient in the Church of God?

A. Yes, very ancient; for not to mention St. *John Baptist's* Life in the Wilderness, St. *Luke* i. 30. and the Lives of the first Christians of *Jerusalem*, who had all things common, and sold their possessions and goods continuing daily with one accord in the temple, &c. *Acts* ii. 44, 45, 46; in which they exhibited a Specimen of a Religious Life; we learn from the most certain Monuments of Antiquity, that even in the three first Centuries there were Religious Men, whom *Eusebius* calls *Ascetæ*, and great Numbers of Nuns or Virgins consecrated to God; tho' neither the one nor the other were as yet formed into regular Monasteries, till the Beginning of the fourth Century.

About the Middle of the third Century, St. *Paul*, the first Hermit, flying from the Fury of the Persecution begun by *Decius* in the Year 249, retired into the Desert of *Thebais*, and there passed ninety Years and upwards in a lonesome Cave, in Conversation with God. His wonderful Life is extant, written by St. *Jerome*.

About the Year 271, St. *Antony*, a young Gentleman of *Egypt*, left his Estate and the World to consecrate himself to a Religious Life. He found at his first Retirement some others that had already undertaken that Kind of Life, tho' few in Number, and those living near the Towns or Villages; but he, by his Example, drew great Numbers after him into the Desert, and is generally looked upon the Author and Father of a monastick Life. His Life is written by the great St. *Athanasius*, and is full of excellent Lessons of Spirituality.

About the Year 313, St. *Pachomius* retired from the World; and, after having lived some Time in Solitude

Solitude with St. *Palæmon*, became the Father of many Religious, and the first Founder of the famous Congregation of *Tabenne*, to which he prescribed a Rule which he had received from an Angel.

From these Beginnings the Desarts of *Egypt* and of *Thebais* soon were peopled with innumerable Solitaries, and all those Parts were full of Religious of both Sexes, of admirable Virtue; insomuch, that when *Rufinus* visited those Countries in the latter End of the fourth Century, he found in the City of *Oxyrinus* alone ten thousand Religious Men, and twenty thousand Nuns.

From *Egypt* this Kind of Life, so agreeable to the Principles of the Gospel and the Spirit of Christianity, quickly spread itself through all Parts of the World inhabited by Christians. St. *Hilarion*, having learned St. *Anthony's* Way of living, began to practise the like in *Palestine*, about the Beginning of the fourth Century; and that Country also was quickly replenished with Religious Men and Women: Whilst St. *James*, afterwards Bishop of *Nisibis*, St. *Julian Sabas*, and other great Servants of God, whose Lives and Miracles are recorded by *Theodoret* in his *Philotheus*, propagated the same Way of living in *Syria* and *Mesopotamia*. About the same Time, or not long after, the Desarts of *Pontus* and *Cappadocia* began also to be inhabited by Religious Men, whose Manner of Life was embraced by those two great Lights of the Church, St. *Gregory Nazianzen* and St. *Basil*; the latter of which composed an excellent Rule for his Religious, professed to this Day by the *Greek* and *Russian* Monks, and by some in *Poland* and *Italy*.

As for the *Western* Part of the Church, we find that the monastick Life had already gained a great Footing there in the fourth Century. St. *Augustine* informs us of a Monastery near the Walls of *Milan*, full of good religious Men, under the Care of St. *Ambrose*,

Ambrose, L. 8. Confess. Chap. 6. and of several such religious Societies at *Rome*, in his Book of the Manners of the Catholick Church, *Chap. 33.* Of a religious House near *Treves* in *Germany*, where two Courtiers, upon reading the Life of *St. Anthony*, consecrated themselves to God, *L. 8. Confess. C. 6.* And the same *St. Augustine*, upon his Return into *Africa*, after his Conversion, propagated the same Kind of Life in that Part of the World also.

In *France*, the great *St. Martin*, Bishop of *Tours* in the fourth Century, whose Apostolick Life and Miracles are recorded by *Sulpicius Severus*, founded the Monastery of *Marmoutier*, in which he united together in one the Clerical and Monastical Life, as *St. Eusebius* had done before him at *Vercelli* in *Piedmont*. But the most famous Monastery in all *France* was that of the Isle of *Lerines*, founded towards the Close of the fourth Century, by *St. Honoratus*, afterwards Bishop of *Arles*; which was the fruitful Parent of many great Saints and illustrious Prelates.

As for our *British* Islands, tho' we know not the particular Time when the first Monasteries began to be established, yet we are assured that we were not long behind our Neighbours in embracing this Kind of Life. The Monastery of *Bangor*, in *Wales*, in which there were about two thousand Monks, was very ancient; and we are told of an ancient Monastery at *Winchester*, before the *English Saxons* came over into this Land. As for *Ireland*, *St. Patrick*, who established Christianity there, settled also the Monastick Discipline amongst his Converts; which from thence was propagated to the *Picts* in *Scotland*, by *St. Columba*, alias *Columkil*, the Apostle of that Nation, who having first founded in *Ireland* the famous Abbey of *Dearmach*, afterwards passing into *Scotland*, founded that in the Isle of *Hy*; from which two Monasteries many others, as well in *Ireland* as in *Scotland*, had their Origin, all follow-

ing the Institute of the aforesaid St. *Columba*, of whom *Ven. Bede*, in his third Book of the *Ecclesiastical History of the English Church*, Chap. 4. writes thus: "Of whose Life and Words [he speaks of St. *Columb.*] some Writings are said to be preserved by his Disciples. But whatsoever he was himself, this we know of him for certain, that he left Successors renowned for much Continency, the Love of God, and regular Observance."

From this Monastery of the Isle of *Hy*, St. *Aidan*, the first Bishop of *Lindisfarn*, and many other Apostolick Preachers came, who preached and established Christianity among the *Northern English*, as St. *Augustine* and his Companions did amongst those of the *South*, St. *Felix* amongst the *East English*, and St. *Birinus* amongst those of the *West*.

Q. I should be glad to know which are the chief religious Orders that flourish at present in the Church of God; together with the Names of their Founders, the Time of their first Institution, &c.

A. I shall endeavour to satisfy you as briefly as I can. And first as to the *East*. The Orders that flourish there, are those of St. *Antony*, and of St. *Basil*, of which we have spoken already.

In the *West* St. *Augustine*, upon his Return into *Africa*, about the Year 390, with divers others his Companions, entered into a religious Society, wherein he lived for three Years before his coming to *Hippo*. And after his coming to that City, where he was first made Priest, and afterwards Bishop, he erected a Monastery within his own House, living there with his Clergy in common; to which Institute the *Canon Regulars* of St. *Augustine* owe their Original, who have flourished ever since in the Church of God, and have branched out into divers Congregations, as that of St. *John Lateran*, that of St. *Victor*, of St. *Genovefa*, &c. As the *Hermits* of St. *Augustine's* Order, commonly called *Austin Friars*,

Friars, derive their Institute from his first religious Society, before his coming to *Hippo*. These *Hermits* were translated from the Desert into Towns, by Pope *Innocent* the Fourth, to the End that their godly Conversation might be more profitable to their Neighbours. From this Order *Luther* apostatized in the 16th Century, and, like the Dragon, *Revel.* xii. ver. 4. drew with him the third part of the stars of heaven [that is, great Numbers of Religious of all Denominations] and cast them to the earth.

Towards the End of the fifth Century *St. Benedict*, vulgo *Bennet*, retired from the World; and after having practised for many Years a religious Life in a most eminent Degree of Perfection, founded twelve Monasteries in *Latium*, and the thirteenth at *Mount Cassin*, in the Kingdom of *Naples*, from which he happily passed to the Mountain of Eternity, in the sixth Century. He composed an excellent Rule, which was afterwards embraced by almost all the Religious of the *West*, 'till towards the twelfth Century; and has furnished the Church of God with innumerable Prelates and Apostolick Men, and Heaven with innumerable Saints. The wonderful Life of *St. Bennet* was written by *St. Gregory the Great* in his *Dialogues*.

From the Rule of *St. Bennet* many other Orders have sprung besides the *Benedictines*, as the *Clunienses*, so called from their first Abbey of *Cluny* in *France*. These were instituted by *St. Odo*, in the tenth Century, and for a long Time flourished in great Sanctity. The *Camaldulenses*, instituted by *St. Romuald*, amongst the *Apennine* Mountains, about the Year 1000, and to this Day edifying the Church, by yielding a sweet Odour of Sanctity to all that come near them. The Monks of *Valombrosa*, instituted by *St. John Gualbert*, in the 11th Century, and called from the Place of their first Institution. The *Cistercians*,
fo

so called from their first Abbey, founded about the End of the eleventh Century, by St. *Robert*, Abbot of *Molesme* in *France*. St. *Robert* being obliged to return to his Abbey of *Molesme*, left for his Successor St. *Albericus*, who was succeeded by St. *Stephen Harding*, an *Englishman*, who had the Happiness to receive St. *Bernard* into his Society, by whose Preaching and Miracles this Order was wonderfully propagated, and the Religious of it from him are commonly called *Bernardines*. Of this Order is the famous Abbey of *La Trappe* in *France*, which in these our Days has renewed the Austerities and abstracted Lives of the primitive Religious. I pass over several other Religious, professing the Rule of St. *Benedict*, as the *Silvestrines*, the *Grandimontenses*, the *Celestins*, so called from St. *Peter Celestine*, their Founder, the *Olivetans*, &c.

Towards the End of the eleventh Century St. *Brum*, a Doctor of *Paris*, with six Companions, retired from the World to the desert Mountains of *Carthusia*, in the Diocese of *Grenoble* in *Dauphine*, and there laid the Foundation of the Order of the *Carthusians*, formerly in *England* called the *Charterhouse* Monks, who to this Day have happily preserved their primitive Fervour, keeping perpetual Silence, only when they are singing the Praises of God, perpetual Abstinence, wearing always a rough Hair Shirt, and commonly employed in Prayer and Contemplation.

About the Year 1120, St. *Norbet*, who had exchanged the Court Life for the voluntary Poverty recommended by the Gospel, founded an Order of Canon Regulars, from him called *Norbertines*, and *Premonstratenses*, from *Premontrè*, the Place of their first Abbey, in the Diocese of *Laon* in *France*.

In the same Age also was instituted in *France*, The Order of the blessed Trinity, for the Redemption of Captives out of the Hands of Infidels, by St. *John*

de

de Matha and *St. Felix de Valois*, two holy Priests and Solitaries, invited to this charitable Work by divine Visions. As in the following Age another Order was instituted in *Spain* for the same End, by *St. Peter Nolasco*. This is commonly called *The Order of our Lady de Mercede*, or of the *Redemption*.

About the Year 1200 the *Carmelites* were first brought into *Europe*, and were quickly spread thro' all Parts of *Christendom*, where they have flourished exceedingly; no where more than heretofore in *England*, where, from the Colour of their Mantles, they were called *White Friars*. These were originally Hermits, living upon *Mount Carmel*, who, whilst the Christians were in Possession of *Syria* and the *Holy Land*, were assembled together by *Aimeric*, the Patriarch of *Antioch*, and received a Rule from *Albert*, Patriarch of *Jerusalem*. This Rule was afterwards mitigated by the Pope; but embraced again in its full Extent by *St. Teresa*, in the sixteenth Century, and by the Friars and Nuns that follow her Reform, and are called *Discalced*, or *Barefoot Carmelites*.

Not long after the *Carmelites* coming into *Europe*, God was pleased to raise two new Orders, which have flourished from that Time to this Day; and furnished the Church with several Popes, innumerable Cardinals, Bishops, Ecclesiastical Writers, and Apostolick Men; and have both been very fruitful in Saints, viz. the Order of *St. Dominick*, and that of *St. Francis*. The *Dominicans*, or *Friars Preachers*, were instituted for preaching the Gospel to Infidels and Sinners, which they have done with great Success. These were formerly in our Country called *Black Friars*, from the Colour of their Cloak or outward Habit, which is black; as the *Franciscans* were called *Grey Friars*. *St. Francis* would have his Religious for Humility called *Friars Minors*, whom he trained up in great Poverty and Penance.

And

And so great and speedy was the Increase of this Order, that in a Chapter held by the Saint himself at *Affisium*, there were assembled no less than five thousand Religious. This Order at present is the most numerous in the Church of God, and is divided into three chief Branches, under their respective Generals, *viz.* the *Conventuals*, the *Observants*, and the *Capuchins*. The *Observants* are again subdivided into *Cordeliers*, *Recolleets*, &c. Besides which, there is the Congregation of St. *Peter* of *Alcantara*, which is the strictest of all. The Nuns, which follow the Rule of St. *Francis*, are commonly called *Poor Clares*, from St. *Clare*, who first received the Habit from St. *Francis*, and was their first Abbess. Besides these there are *Capuchinesses*, or *Penitents*, Nuns of the third Order of St. *Francis*, &c.

Other Orders that have been founded between the Beginning of the thirteenth Century and the sixteenth, are, the *Servites*, or Servants of the Blessed Virgin, instituted about 1232, by seven Gentlemen of *Florence*, who retired themselves to a neighbouring Mountain to do Penance; the *Crucigeri*, or *Crutched-Friars*, tho' these by some are supposed to have been much more ancient; the *Jesuati*, instituted by St. *John Colombin*, Anno 1536; the *Brigittins*, by St. *Brigit*, Anno 1360; the *Hieronomites*, by *Pedro Ferdinando*, Anno 1383; the *Minims*, by St. *Francis* of *Paula*, about the Year 1450, &c.

The sixteenth Century gave Rise to several new Orders: The *Theatins*, or *Regular Clerks*, were instituted Anno 1528, by St. *Cajetan* *Thianæus*, a Man of Apostolick Life. This Order flourishes very much in *Italy*, as well as the *Barnabites*, or Clericks Regular of St. *Paul*.

The *Jesuits*, or *Society of Jesus*, were instituted by St. *Ignatius* of *Loyola*, Anno 1540, as a Troop or Company of *Auxiliaries*, to assist the Pastoral Clergy in

in that Time of the Church's greatest Necessity ; to labour in the Conversion and Sanctification of Souls ; to train up Youth in Piety and Learning ; to defend the Faith against Hereticks, and propagate it amongst Infidels : In all which Particulars this Order has done signal Service to the Church in these two last Centuries.

About the same Time St. *John de Deo* founded an Order of *Religious Brethren*, to take Care of the Sick, and to provide for them all necessary Assistance both for Soul and Body.

In the Beginning of the seventeenth Century St. *Francis de Sales*, Bishop of *Geneva*, instituted the Order of the Nuns of the *Visitation of the Blessed Virgin*. And thus have I given you a short Account of the chief Orders that at present flourish in the Church.

Besides these Religious Orders, there are certain Regular Congregations of Clergy living in common, tho' not under the Tie of Religious Vows ; as the *Oratorians*, instituted by St. *Philip Neri* in the sixteenth Century ; the Fathers of the *Christian Doctrine* ; the *Lazarians*, or Fathers of the *Mission*, &c.

Q. Are there not also many *Confraternities* amongst the Catholicks, in which many of the Laity are enrolled ? Pray what is the Meaning of these *Confraternities* ?

A. These *Confraternities*, or *Brotherhoods*, are certain Societies, or Associations, instituted for the Encouragement of Devotion, or for promoting of certain Works of Piety, Religion, and Charity, under some Rules or Regulations ; tho' without being tied to them, so far as that the Breach or Neglect of them would be sinful. The Good of these *Confraternities* is, that thereby good Works are promoted, the Faithful are encouraged to frequent the Sacra-

Sacraments, to hear the Word of God, and mutually to assist one another by their Prayers, &c.

C H A P. XIX.

Of the Sacrament of Matrimony, and of the Nuptial Benediction.

2. **W**HEN was *Matrimony* instituted?

A. It was first instituted by God Almighty between our first Parents in the earthly Paradise, *Gen. ii.* and this Institution was confirmed by *Christ* in the New Testament, *St. Matt. xix. 4, 5, 6.* where he concludes, *What God hath joined together, let no Man put asunder?* And our Lord, to shew that this State is *holy*, and not to be condemned or despised, was pleased to honour it with his first Miracle wrought at the Wedding of *Cana*, *St. John ii.*

2. What are the Ends for which *Matrimony* is instituted?

A. For the Procreation of Children, which may serve God here, and people Heaven hereafter; for a Remedy against Concupiscence, and for the Benefit of conjugal Society, that Man and Wife may mutually help one another, and contribute to one another's Salvation.

2. How do you prove that *Matrimony* is a Sacrament?

A. Because it is a Conjunction made and sanctified by God himself, and not to be dissolved by any Power of Man, ~~and~~ being a *sacred Sign* or mysterious Representation of the indissoluble Union of *Christ* and his Church. Hence *St. Paul, Eph. v. 31, 32.* expressly calls it a *great Sacrament* or *Mystery*, with regard to *Christ* and his Church; and as such it has been always acknowledged in the Catholick Church. See *St. Ambrose, L. i. de Abraham, C. 7.* *St. Augustine,*
L.

L. de Bono Conjug. C. 18 & 24. L. de Fide & Operibus, C. 17. L. de Nuptiis & Concup. C. 10, &c.

Q. Does *Matrimony* give Grace to those that receive it?

A. Yes, if they receive it in the Dispositions that they ought, it gives a Grace to the married Couple to love one another according to God, to restrain the Violence of Concupiscence, to bear with one another's Weaknesses, and to bring up their Children in the Fear of God.

Q. How comes it then that so many Marriages are unhappy, if *Matrimony* be a Sacrament which gives so great a Grace?

A. Because the greatest Part don't receive it in the Dispositions they ought: They consult not God in their Choice, but only their own Lust or temporal Interest; they prepare not themselves for it, by putting themselves in the State of Grace; and too often are guilty of Freedoms before Marriage, which are not allowable by the Law of God.

Q. In what Dispositions ought Persons to receive the Sacrament of *Matrimony*?

A. They ought to be in a State of Grace by Confession; their Intention ought to be pure, viz. to embrace this holy State for the Ends for which God instituted it; and if they be under the Care of Parents, &c. they ought to consult them, and do nothing in this Kind without their Consent.

Q. In what Manner does the Catholick Church proceed in the Administration of *Matrimony*?

A. 1st, She orders that the Banns should be proclaimed on three *Sundays*, or Festival-days, before the Celebration of Marriage; to the End, that if any one knows any Impediment why the Parties may not, by the Law of God or his Church, be joined in *Matrimony*, he may declare it.

2^{dly}, The Parties are to be married by their own Parish-Priest, in the Presence of two or three Witnesses.

3^{dly},

3dly, The Parties express, in the Presence of the Priest, their mutual Consent, according to the usual Form of the Church: After which the Priest says, *I join you in Matrimony, in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.*

4thly, The Priest blesses the Ring, according to this Form:

V. *Our Help is in the Name of the Lord.*

A. *Who made Heaven and Earth.*

V. *O Lord, hear my Prayer.*

A. *And let my Cry come to thee.*

V. *The Lord be with you.*

A. *And with thy Spirit.*

Let us pray.

BLESS, ✠ O Lord, this Ring, which we bless ✠ in thy Name, that she that shall wear it, keeping inviolable Fidelity to her Spouse, may ever remain in Peace, and in thy Will, and always live in mutual Charity. Thro' Christ, our Lord. Amen.

Then the Priest sprinkles the Ring with holy Water, and the Bridegroom taking it, puts it on the fourth Finger of the Left-hand of the Bride, saying, *In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.* Here also, according to the Custom of England, the Bridegroom puts some Gold and Silver into the Hand of the Bride, saying, *With this Ring I thee wed, this Gold and Silver I thee give, and with my Body I thee worship, and with all my worldly Goods I thee endow.*

After this the Priest says, V. *Confirm, O God, this which thou hast wrought in us.* A. *From thy Holy Temple, which is in Jerusalem. Lord have Mercy on us. Christ have Mercy on us. Lord have Mercy on us. Our Father, &c. And lead us not into Temptation.* A. *But deliver us from Evil.* V. *Save thy Servants.* A. *Trusting in thee, O my God.* V. *Send them Help, O Lord, from thy Sanctuary.* A. *And defend them from Sion.* V. *Be to them, O Lord, a*
Tower

Tower of Strength. A. Against the Face of the Enemy. V. O Lord, hear my Prayer. A. And let my Cry come to thee. V. The Lord be with you. A. And with thy Spirit.

Let us pray.

LOOK down, O Lord, we beseech thee, upon these thy Servants, and afford thy favourable Assistance to thy own Institutions, by which thou hast ordained the Propagation of Mankind; that they who are joined together by thy Authority, may be preserved by thy Aid. Thro' Christ, our Lord. Amen.

5thly, After this, if the *Nuptial Benediction* is to be given, the Priest says the Mass appointed in the *Missal* for the Bridegroom and the Bride; and having said the *Pater-Noster*, turning about to the newly-married Couple, he says over them the following Prayers.

Let us pray.

Mercifully give ear, O Lord, to our Prayers, and let thy Grace accompany this thy Institution, by which thou hast ordained the Propagation of Mankind; that this Tie, which is made by thy Authority, may be preserved by thy Grace. Thro' our Lord *Jesus Christ*, &c.

Let us pray.

O God, who by thy omnipotent Hand didst create all Things of nothing; who at the first forming of the World, having made Man to the Likeness of God, didst out of his Flesh make the Woman, and give her to him for his Help; and by this didst inform us, that what in its Beginning was one, ought never to be separated: O God, who by so excellent a Mystery hast consecrated this Union of both Sexes, that thou would'st have it to be a Type of that great Sacrament which is betwixt *Christ* and his Church: O God, by whom this Contract and mutual Commerce has been ordained, and privileged with a Blessing, which alone has not been recalled,

either

either in Punishment of original Sin, or by the Sentence of the Flood; mercifully look on this thy Servant the Bride, who being now to be given in Marriage, earnestly desires to be received under thy Protection. May Love and Peace abound in her; may she marry in *Christ* faithful and chaste; may she ever imitate those holy Women of former Times; may she be as acceptable to her Husband as *Rachel*, as discreet as *Rebecca*; may she in her Years and Fidelity be like *Sarah*, and may the Author of Evil at no Time have any Share in her Actions; may she be steady in Faith and the Commandments; may she be true in her Engagements, and flee all unlawful Addresses; may she fortify her Infirmary by thy Discipline; may she be gravely bashful, venerably modest, and well learned in the Doctrine of Heaven; may she be fruitful in her Offspring; may she be approved and innocent, and may her happy Lot be to arrive at length at the Rest of the Blessed in the Kingdom of Heaven; may they both see their Childrens Children to the third and fourth Generation, and live to a good old Age. Thro' the same Lord *Jesus Christ*, &c.

After the Priest's Communion, they both receive the blessed Sacrament; and in the End of the Mass, before the usual Blessing of the People, the Priest turns to the Bridegroom and Bride, and says,

THE God of *Abraham*, the God of *Isaac*, and the God of *Jacob* be with you; and may he fulfill his Blessing in you, that you may see your Childrens Children to the third and fourth Generation; and afterwards enter into the Possession of everlasting Life, by the Help of our Lord *Jesus Christ*, who, with the Father, and the Holy Ghost, liveth and reigneth God, for ever and ever. *Amen.*

Then the Priest admonishes them to be faithful to one another, to love one another, and to live in
the

the Fear of God; and exhorts them to be continent, by mutual Consent, at the Times of Devotion, and especially at the Times of Fasting, and of great Solemnities; and so he finishes the Mass in the usual Manner.

Q. Is there any Obligation of receiving this *Nuptial Benediction* when Persons are married?

A. The Church wishes that it were never omitted in the first Marriage, when it may be had, because of the Blessing it draws down from Heaven; and it would certainly be a Fault for Persons to marry without it, when and where it may be had.

Q. Why does not the Church allow of this *Nuptial Benediction* when the Man or Woman has been once married before?

A. Because the second Marriage does not so perfectly represent the Union of *Christ* and his Church, which is an eternal Tie of one to one.

Q. Why does the Church not allow of the Solemnity of Marriages from the first *Sunday of Advent* till after *Twelfth-day*, and from *Ash-Wednesday* till after *Low-sunday*?

A. Because the Times of *Advent* and *Lent* are Times of Penance, as the Times of *Christmas* and *Easter* are Times of extraordinary Devotion, and therefore are not proper for Marriage-Fests, or such like Solemnities.

Q. What are the Duties of married People to one another?

A. You shall hear them from Scripture.

Ephes. v. 22. *Let women be subject to their husbands, as to the Lord.* Ver. 23. *Because the man is the head of the woman, as Christ is the head of the church: he is the Saviour of his body.* Ver. 24. *Therefore as the church is subject to Christ, so also let women be to their husbands in all things.* Ver. 25. *Husbands love your wives, as Christ also loved the church, and delivered himself for it . . .* Ver. 28. *So ought also husbands*

husbands to love their wives as their own bodies: he that loveth his wife loveth himself. Ver. 29. For no one ever hated his own flesh, but nourisheth it, and cherisheth it, as Christ also doth the church. Ver. 30. Because we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones. Ver. 31. For this cause shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall adhere to his wife, and they shall be two in one flesh (Gen. ii.) Ver. 32. This sacrament is great, but I say in Christ and in the church. Ver. 33. However, let every one of you in particular love his wife as himself; and let the wife reverence the husband. See to the same Effect, Colos. iii. 18, 19.

I St. Peter iii. 1. Let women be subject to their husbands, to the end that if any believe not the word, they may be gained without the word, by the conversation of the women. Ver. 2. Beholding your chaste conversation in fear. Ver. 3. Whose adorning, let it not be in the outward plaiting of the hair, or laying on gold round about, or putting on apparel. Ver. 4. But the bidden man of the heart, in the incorruptibility of a quiet and modest spirit, which is rich in the sight of God. Ver. 5. For in this manner heretofore also holy women, hoping in God, adorned themselves, being subject to their husbands. Ver. 6. As Sarah obey'd Abraham, calling him Lord, whose daughters you are, &c. Ver. 7. Husbands in like manner dwelling with them according to knowledge, give honour to the woman as to the weaker vessel, and as to the joint-heirs of the grace of life, that your prayers may not be hinder'd.

I Cor. vii 3. Let the husband render the [marriage] debt to the wife; and in like manner the wife to her husband. Ver. 4. The wife hath not power of her own body, but the husband; and in like manner the husband hath not power of his own body, but the wife. Ver. 5. Defraud not one another, unless perhaps by consent for a time, that you may give yourselves to prayer, and return again together to the same, lest

Satan

Satan tempt you on account of your incontinency, Ver. 6. Yet this I speak according to indulgence, not according to command. Ver. 7. For I would have you all be as myself, &c. Ver. 10. But as to them who are joined in wedlock, 'tis not I, but the Lord, commands that the wife depart, not from the husband. Ver. 11. But if she shall depart that she remain unmarried, or be reconciled to her husband: and let not the husband put away his wife.

Titus ii. 4. They may teach the young women prudence, that they love their husbands, be tender of their children. Ver. 5. Discreet, chaste, sober, having care of the house, gentle, submissive to their husbands, that the word of God be not blasphemed.

There are also excellent Documents for married People in the Book of Tobias, ch. vi. 16. Then the Angel Raphael said to him, Hear me, and I will shew thee who they are over whom the devil can prevail. Ver. 17. For they who in such manner receive matrimony, as to shut out God from themselves and from their mind, and to give themselves to their lust, as the horse and mule, which have not understanding, over them the devil hath power. Ver. 22. Thou shalt take the virgin with the fear of the Lord, mov'd rather for love of children than for lust, that in the seed of Abraham thou mayest obtain blessing in children.

And Chap. iii. 16. Thou knowest, Lord, that I never coveted a husband, and have kept my soul clean from all concupiscence. Ver. 16. I never kept company with them that play; nor with them that walk in lightness did I make myself a partner. Ver. 17. But a husband I consented to take, with thy fear, not with my lust.

And Chap. iii. 8. Thou madest Adam of the slime of the earth, and gavest him Eve for his help-mate. Ver. 9. And now, Lord, thou knowest that not for fleshly lust do I take my sister to wife, but only for the

love and posterity, in which thy name may be blessed for ever and ever.

2. What are the Duties of married People with regard to the Education of their Children ?

A. They are obliged to train them up from their very Infancy in the Fear of God, and to give them early Impressions of Piety ; to see that they be instructed in the Christian Doctrine, and that they be kept to their Prayers and other religious Duties ; in fine, to give them good Example, and to remove from them the Occasions of Sin, especially bad Company and Idleness.

2. Does the Catholick Church allow her Children to marry with those that are not of her Communion ?

A. She has often prohibited such Marriages, as may be seen in the 16th Canon of the Council of *Illiberis*, the 10th Canon of the Council of *Laodicea*, the 14th Canon of the Council of *Chalcedon*, the 67th Canon of the Council of *Agde*, &c. Tho' sometimes, and in some Places, the Pastors of the Church, for weighty Reasons, have been forced to dispense with this Law, and tolerate such Marriages.

2. Why is the Church so averse to these Kind of Marriages ?

A. 1st, Because she would not have her Children communicate in sacred Things, such as Matrimony is, with those that are out of her Communion. 2^{dly}, Because such Marriages are apt to give Occasion to Dissensions in Families, whilst one of the Parties draws one Way, the other another. 3^{dly}, Because there is a Danger of the Catholick Party being perverted, or at least of not being allowed the free Exercise of Religion. 4^{thly}, Because there is a Danger of the Children being brought up in Error, of which we have seen some sad Instances. Where note, that those Bargains are by no means to be allowed

allowed of, by which the contracting Party agree to have the Boys brought up in the Religion of the Father, and the Girls to follow the Mother. God and his Church will have no such Division, nor give up thus their Right to any one.

C H A P. XX.

Of the Churching of Women after Child-bearing.

Q. **W**HAT is the Meaning of the Churching of Women after Child-bearing? Is it that you look upon them to be under any Uncleanneſs, as formerly in the Old Law, or by any-ways out of the Church by Child-bearing?

A. No, by no Means: But what we call the *Churching* of Women is nothing elſe but their coming to the Church to give Thanks to God for their ſafe Delivery, and to receive the Bleſſing of the Prieſt upon that Occaſion.

Q. What is the Form and Manner of Churching of Women?

A. The Woman that deſires to be Churched kneels down at the Door of Entry of the Church, holding a lighted Candle in her Hand; and the Prieſt, veſted with his Surplice and Stole, ſprinkles her firſt with Holy Water, and then ſays:

V. *Our Help is in the Name of the Lord.*

R. *Who made Heaven and Earth.*

Anthem. *This Woman ſhall receive a Bleſſing from the Lord.*

Pſalm 23, aliàs 24.

THE earth is the Lord's, and the fulneſs thereof; the world, and all they that dwell there-in.

For he hath founded it upon the ſeas, and hath prepared it upon the rivers.

Who shall ascend into the mountain of the Lord ?
or who shall stand in his holy place ?

The innocent in hands, and clean of heart, that
hath not taken his soul in vain, nor sworn deceit-
fully to his neighbour.

He shall receive a blessing from the Lord, and
mercy from God his Saviour.

This is the generation of them that seek him, of
them that seek the face of the God of *Jacob*.

Lift up your gates, O ye princes, and be ye lifted
up, O eternal gates, and the King of glory shall en-
ter in.

Who is this King of glory ? The Lord, who is
strong and mighty ; the Lord, mighty in battle.

Lift up your gates, ye princes, and be ye lifted up,
O eternal gates, and the King of glory shall enter
in.

Who is this King of glory ? The Lord of hosts, he
is the King of glory.

Glory be to the Father, &c.

As it was in the Beginning, &c.

*Anthem. This Woman shall receive a Blessing from
the Lord, and Mercy from God her Saviour ; for this
is the Generation of them that seek the Lord.*

After this the Priest stretches out to her Hand the
End of the Stole, and so introduces her into the
Church, saying, *Come into the Temple of God, adore
the Son of the blessed Virgin Mary, who has given to
thee to be fruitful in thy Offspring.*

Then she kneels before the Altar, giving Thanks
to God for his Benefits bestowed upon her, whilst
the Priest prays as follows :

*Lord have Mercy on us. Christ have Mercy on us.
Lord have Mercy on us. Our Father, &c. V. And
lead us not into Temptation. A. But deliver us from
Evil. V. Save thy Handmaid, O Lord. A. Trust-
ing in thee, O my God. V. Send her Help, O Lord,
from thy Sanctuary. A. And defend her from Sion.*
V. Let

The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c. 197

V. *Let not the Enemy have any Power over her.*
A. *Nor the Son of Iniquity presume to hurt her.*
V. *O Lord, hear my Prayer.* A. *And let my Cry come to thee.* V. *The Lord be with you.* A. *And with thy Spirit.*

Let us pray.

Almighty Everlasting God, who, by the blessed Virgin Mary's happy bringing forth, has changed into Joy the Pains of the Faithful in their Child-bearing; mercifully look down upon this thy Servant, who comes with Joy to the Holy Temple to return thee Thanks; and grant, that after this Life, she may, by the Merits and Intercession of the same blessed Mary, deserve to be received with her Child into the Joys of everlasting Happiness. Thro' Christ our Lord.

Then the Priest sprinkles her again with Holy Water, in the Form of the Cross, saying, *May the Peace and Blessing of Almighty God, Father, ✕ Son, and Holy Ghost, come down upon thee, and remain with thee for ever. Amen.*

C H A P. XXI.

Of the Feasts of the Catholick Church.

SECT. I. *Of Fasting and Abstinence in general.*

Q. **H**AVE you any Reason to think that Fasting and Abstinence is agreeable to God?

A. Yes, certainly: *John the Baptist's Abstinence is commended, St. Luke i. 15. and St. Matt. iii. 4. And Anna the Prophetess is praised, St. Luke ii. 37. for serving God with fastings and prayers night and day. The Ninivites by fastings obtained Mercy. Jonas iii. 5. Daniel joined fasting with Prayer. Dan. ix. 3. and by fasting, was disposed for heavenly Visions. Dan. x. 3, 7, 12. The Royal Prophet humbled his*

soul in fasting, Psalm xxxiv. (*alias xxxv.*) 13. *Ezra* and *Nehemiah* sought and found seasonable Aid from God by Fasting, *Ezra* viii. 23. and *Nehemiah* i. 4. And God, by the Prophet *Joel*, calls upon his People (*Joel* ii. 12.) to *turn to him with all their heart in FASTING, weeping and mourning.*

Q. But did our Lord *Jesus Christ* design that his Followers should fast?

A. Yes; he not only gave them an Example by fasting forty Days, *St. Matt.* iv. 2. and prescribed to them Lessons concerning *Fasting*, *St. Matt.* vi. 16, &c. but also expressly affirmed, that after the Bridegroom should be taken from them, that is, after his Passion, Resurrection and Ascension, all his Children, that is, all good Christians, should fast, *St. Matt.* ix. 15. *St. Mark* ii. 20. *St. Luke* v. 35. Hence we find the first Christians at *Antioch* fasting, *Acts* xiii. 2. and *Paul* and *Barnabas* ordained with Prayer and Fasting, *ver.* 3. and Priests ordained by them in every Church with Prayer and Fasting, *Acts* xiv. 23. and the Apostles approving themselves as the ministers of God—in fasting, *2 Cor.* vi. 4, 5, &c.

Q. Has Fasting any particular Efficacy against the Devil?

A. Yes, *This kind* [of devils] *can come forth by nothing, but by prayer and fasting*, saith our Lord, *St. Mark* ix. 29.

Q. What are the Ends for which Christians are to fast, and for which the Church prescribes Days of Fasting and Abstinence?

A. 1st, To chastise ourselves, and to do Penance for our Sins, that so, like the *Ninivites*, we may obtain Mercy of God. 2^{dly}, To curb and restrain our Passions and Concupiscences, and to bring the Flesh under Subjection to the Spirit. 3^{dly}, To be enabled by Fasting to raise our Souls the easier to God, and to offer him up purer Prayer.

Q. What

Q. What are the Rules prescribed by the Catholick Church with Regard to eating on Fasting-days?

A. 1st, The Church prohibits all Flesh-meat on Fasting-days, and in *Lent* Eggs also and Cheese: Formerly Wine was prohibited; but this Prohibition, by a contrary Custom, has been long since laid aside. 2^{dly}, The Church allows her Children but one Meal on Fasting-days; besides which, Custom has introduced a small Collation at Night, 3^{dly}, The Meal which the Church allows on Fasting-days must not be taken till towards Noon: Formerly, for the first twelve hundred Years of the Church, the Meal must not be taken in *Lent* before the Evening; and on other Fasting-days not till Three o'Clock in the Afternoon. These Rules regard the Days of *Fasting*; but as to those that are only Days of *Abstinence*, such as the *Sundays* in *Lent*, the three *Rogation-days*, and the *Saturdays* throughout the Year, we are only obliged to abstain from Flesh on those Days, but no Ways confined to one Meal.

Q. But why does the Church prohibit Flesh on Days of Fasting and Abstinence?

A. Not that she looks upon any Meats unclean by the New Law; but she does it that her Children may better comply with the Ends of Fasting, *viz.* Mortification and Penance, by abstaining on those Days from that Kind of Food which is most nourishing and most agreeable.

Q. But is not this condemned by the Apostle, 1 *Tim.* iv. 3. where he calls it the Doctrine of Devils, to command to abstain from meats which God hath created to be received with Thanksgiving?

A. The Apostle speaks of the Doctrine of those who with the *Marcionites*, *Manichæans*, and other Hereticks, forbid the Use of Meat, not as the Church does, by Way of Mortification and Penance, on Days of Fasting and Humiliation, but as a Thing

absolutely unclean, and unlawful to be used at any Time, as coming from an evil Principle. All that know any Thing of Church-history, know that this was the System of many Hereticks, who also upon the same Account absolutely condemned Marriage, as tending to the Propagation of Flesh. Now they that know these Things are guilty of the highest Injustice, in pretending that these Words of the Apostle were levelled at the Catholick Church, when their own Conscience must tell them that they were designed for another Set of People. The Catholick Church is far from condemning the Use of God's Creatures in proper Times and Seasons; but she neither does, nor ever did, think all Kind of Diet proper for Days of Fasting and Penance: And in this Particular the modern Church is so far from going beyond the Primitive Christians, that, on the contrary, all Kind of Monuments of Antiquity make it evident, that our Forefathers, in the first Ages of the Church, were more severe in their Abstinence than we now are.

Q. But does not the Apostle say, *1 Cor. x. 25. Whatsoever is sold in the shambles, that eat, asking no question for conscience sake?*

A. He speaks not this with relation to the Days of Fasting, as if any Sorts of Meat might be eaten on Fasting-days; but he speaks, as it is visible from the Context, with regard to Meats offered to Idols; which some weak Brethren were so much afraid of eating, that upon this Account they durst not eat the Meat sold in the Shambles, lest it might have been offered to Idols. Upon the same Principle the Apostle adds, *ver. 27. If any of them that believe not, invite you to a feast, and ye be disposed to go, whatsoever is set before you eat, asking no question for conscience sake. Ver. 28. But if any man say unto you, this is offered in sacrifice unto idols, eat not for his sake that shew'd it, and for conscience sake, &c.*

Q. Do

Q. Do you take it then to be a Sin to eat Meat on Fasting-days, or otherwise to break the Church-Fasts without Necessity?

A. Yes, certainly; because it is a Sin to disobey our lawful Superiors, and more particularly to disobey the Church of God. *If he neglect to hear the church, let him be to thee as a heathen and a publican,* St. Matt. xviii. 17.

Q. Does not Christ say, St. Matt. xv. 11. *That which goeth into the mouth doth not defile a man?*

A. True: 'Tis not any Uncleaness in the Meat, as many Hereticks have imagined, or any Dirt or Dust which may stick to it by eating without first washing the Hands (of which Case our Lord is speaking in the Text you quote) which can defile the Soul; for every Creature of God is good, and whatsoever corporal Filth enters in at the Mouth is cast forth into the Draught; but that which defiles the Soul when a Person transgresses the Church-Fast, is the Disobedience of the Heart, in breaking the Precept of the Church, which God has commanded us to hear and to obey. And thus an *Israelite* would have been defiled in the Time of the Old Law, by eating of Blood or Swine's Flesh; and thus our first Parents were defiled by eating the forbidden Fruit, not by the Uncleaness of the Food, but by the Disobedience of the Heart to the Law of God.

Q. What are the Conditions that ought to accompany a Christian Fast, to make it such a Fast as God has chosen?

A. The great and general Fast of a Christian is to abstain from Sin; and God would not accept of the Fasts of the *Jews*, *Isai.* lviii. because on the Days of their Fasting they were found doing their own Will, and oppressing their Neighbours: So that the first Condition that ought to go along with our Fasts is to renounce our Sins; the second is to let

our Fasts be accompanied with Alms-deeds and Prayer, *Tob. xii. 8.* the third to endeavour to perform them in a penitential Spirit.

2. What Persons are excused from the Strictness of the Church-Fast?

A. Children under Age, sick People, Women that are with Child, or that give suck; likewise those that upon Fasting-days are obliged to hard Labour; and in a Word, all such who through Weakness, Infirmary, or other Hindrance, cannot fast without great Prejudice or Danger: Where note, *1st*, That if the Cause be not evident, a Person must have Recourse to his Pastor for Dispensation. *2^{dly}*, That in some of the above-mentioned Cases a Person may be excused from one Part of the Fast, and not from another; or may be excused from Fasting, and yet not from Abstinence. *3^{dly}*, That such as for some just Cause are dispensed with from Fasting, ought to endeavour, as far as their Condition and Circumstances will allow, to be so much the more diligent in their Devotions, more liberal in their Alms, more patient in their Sufferings, and to make up by the interior Spirit of Penance what is wanting to the outward Fast.

S E C T. II.

Of the Fast of Lent.

2. **W**HEN did the Church first begin to observe the Fast of *Lent*?

A. We know no Beginning of it; for it is a Fast that has ever been observed by the Church from the Time of the Apostles, and stands upon the same Bottom as the Observation of the Lord's-Day, that is, upon Apostolick Tradition.

2. Have the ancient Fathers often mentioned this solemn Fast of forty Days, which we call *Lent*?

A. Yes:

A. Yes: It is mentioned by the Holy Fathers in innumerable Places; who also informs us, that they had received it by Tradition from the Apostles. See *St. Jerome, Epist. 54. ad Marcellum*, and *St. Leo the Great, Serm. 43 & 46*. And the Transgressors of this solemn Fast are severely punished by the 68th Canon of the Apostles.

Q. Have you any Thing else to offer to prove that the Fast of *Lent* comes from an Ordinance of the Apostles?

A. Yes: It is proved by that Rule of *St. Augustine, Epist. 118. to Januarius, viz.* That what is found not to have had its Institution from any Council, but to have been ever observed by the universal Church, that some must needs have come from the first Fathers and Founders of the Church, that is, from the Apostles. But the Fast of *Lent* is not found to have had its Institution from any Council, but to have been observed in all Ages, from the very Beginning, amongst all Christian People, from *East to West*: Therefore the Fast of *Lent* is an Apostolick Ordinance and Tradition.

Q. For what Ends was the Fast of *Lent* instituted?

A. 1st, That by this yearly Fast of forty Days we might imitate the Fast of our Lord, *St. Matt. iv. 2.* 2^{dly}, That by this Institution we might set aside the Tithe, or tenth Part of the Year, to be more particularly consecrated to God by Prayer and Fasting; as it was commanded in the Law to give God the Tithes of all Things. 3^{dly}, That by this forty Days Fast, joined with Prayers and Alms-deeds, we might do Penance for the Sins of the whole Year. 4^{thly}, That we might at this Time enter into a kind of spiritual Exercise, and a Retreat from the World; to look more narrowly into the State of our Souls, to repair our decay'd Strength, and to provide effectual Remedies against our usual Failings.

Failings for the Time to come. 5thly, That by this solemn Fast we might celebrate, in a more becoming Manner, the Passion of *Christ*, which we particularly commemorate in *Lent*. In fine, that this Fast might be a Preparation for the great Solemnity of *Easter*, and for the *Paschal Communion*.

2. In what Spirit would the Church have her Children undertake, and go through the Fast of *Lent*?

A. In a *penitential Spirit*; that is, with a deep Sense of Repentance for having offended God; an earnest Desire and Resolution of a new Life, and of mortifying and chastising themselves for their Sins. These Lessons she inculcates every Day in her Office and Liturgy; witness the Hymns prescribed for this holy Time, the Responsories, the Collects, Tracts, &c. I shall give you a Specimen of the Spirit of the Church in this Regard, by setting down some Passages of the Scripture, which she orders to be read in the Canonical Hours of Prayer every Day during this Time.

1. At *Lauds*, *Isaiah* lviii. Cry out, cease not, raise thy voice like a trumpet, and declare to my people their wickednesses, and to the house of Jacob their sins.

2. At *Prime*, or the first Hour, *Isaiah* lv. Seek the Lord whilst he may be found, call upon him whilst he is near.

3. At *Terce*, or the third Hour, *Joel* ii. Be converted to me with your whole heart, in fasting, and weeping, and mourning; and rend your hearts, and not your garments, saith the Lord Almighty.

4. At *Sext*, or the sixth Hour, *Isaiah* lv. Let the wicked man forsake his ways, and the unjust man his thoughts; and let him return to the Lord, and he will have mercy on him; and to our God, for his mercy is great.

5. At *None*, or the ninth Hour, *Isaiah* liii. Break thy bread to the hungry, and bring in the needy and the harbourless

harbourless into thy house: when thou shalt see them naked, cloath him, and despise not thy own flesh.

6. At *Vespers*, or *Even-song*, *Joel ii.* Between the porch and the altar, the priests, the ministers of the Lord, shall mourn, and they shall say, Spare, O Lord, spare thy people; and let not thine Inheritance fall into reproach, for the nations to domineer over them.

To the same Effect she often repeats in her Office the following Exhortation: Let us repent, and amend the Sins which we have ignorantly committed; lest, being suddenly overtaken by the Day of our Death, we seek for Time of Penance, and be not able to find it.

And again: Behold now is an acceptable Time, behold now are the Days of Salvation; let us recommend ourselves in much Patience, &c.

Q. Why do you call the first Day of *Lent* *Ash-wednesday*?

A. From the Ceremony of blessing *Ashes* upon that Day, and putting them upon the Foreheads of the Faithful, to remind them that they must very quickly return to Dust; and therefore must not neglect to lay hold of this present Time of Mercy, and, like the *Ninivites*, and other ancient Penitents, do Penance for their Sins in Sackcloth and *Ashes*. The Prayers which are said by the Church for the blessing of the *Ashes* are directed for the obtaining of God the Spirit of Compunction, and the Remission of Sins for all those who receive those *Ashes*; and the Priest, in making the Sign of the Cross with the *Ashes* on the Forehead of each one of the Faithful, says these Words: Remember, Man, that thou art Dust, and into Dust thou shalt return.

Q. Was it ever the Custom of the Catholick Church to meet on that Day to curse Sinners?

A. No; but to pray to God to obtain Mercy for Sinners.

Q. What Benefit is it to the Faithful to have regular Times of Fasting set aside by the Church, rather

ther than to be left to their own Discretion to fast when they please?

A. 1st, 'Tis to be feared, that many would not fast at all, were they not called upon by these regular Fasts of the Church. 2^{dly}, 'Tis not to be doubted, but that Sinners may more easily and readily find Mercy when they join thus, all in a Body, with the whole Church of God in suing for Mercy.

Q. But is this Mercy to be expected, if Sinners only mortify themselves in Point of eating, and in other Things indulge themselves in their accustom'd Liberties?

A. 'Tis certain, that the true Spirit of Penance, which is the Spirit of *Lent*, requires that they should be mortified not only in their Eating, but also by retrenching all Superfluities in other Things; as in Drinking, Sleeping, idle Visits, and unnecessary Divertisements, according to that of the Church-Hymn for *Lent*.

*Utamur ergo parcius
Verbis, Cibis & Potibus,
Somno, Focis, & arctius
Perstemus in Custodia.*

Q. What do you think of preparing for *Lent* by a Carnival of Debauchery and Excess?

A. I think it is a Relick of Heathenism, infinitely opposite to the Spirit of the Church. The very Name of *Shrove-tide*, in the Language of our Forefathers, signifies the Season or Time of Confession; because our Ancestors were accustomed, according to the true Spirit of the Church, to go to Confession at that Time, that so they might enter upon the solemn Fast of *Lent*, in a Manner suitable to this penitential Fast.

Q. Why is the Evening-Office, or *Vespers*, said before Dinner on all Days in *Lent*, excepting *Sundays*?

A. 'Tis

A. 'Tis a Relick of the ancient Custom of Fasting in *Lent* till the Evening.

Q. Why is the *Alleluia* laid aside during the Time of *Lent*?

A. Because 'tis a Canticle of Joy, and therefore is omitted in this Time of Penance: But instead of it, the Church, at the Beginning of all the Canonical Hours of her daily Office, repeats those Words: *Praise be to thee, O Lord, King of everlasting Glory.*

Q. Why is the fifth *Sunday* in *Lent* called *Passion-Sunday*?

A. Because from that Day till *Easter*, the Church in a particular Manner commemorates the Passion of *Christ*.

Q. Why are the Crucifixes and Altar-pieces covered during this Time, in which we celebrate *Christ's* Passion?

A. Because the Church is then in Mourning for her Spouse, who in his Passion was truly a hidden God, by concealing his Divinity, and becoming for us, as a worm and no man, the reproach of men, and the outcast of the people, Psalm xxi.

S E C T. III.

Of other Days of Fasting and Abstinence in the Catholick Church.

Q. DOES the Church observe any other Days of Fasting and Abstinence besides the forty Days of *Lent*?

A. Yes; she fasts upon the *Wednesdays*, *Fridays* and *Saturdays* in the four *Ember-weeks*; and upon the *Vigils* or *Eves* of most of her Festivals; as also upon *Fridays* in this Kingdom; and she abstains from Flesh on the three *Rogation-days*, on *St. Mark's* Day, and on the *Saturdays* throughout the Year.

Q. Which

Q. Which do you call the four *Ember-weeks*?

A. The four *Ember-weeks* are the Weeks in which the Church gives holy Orders at the four Seasons of the Year, viz. the first Week in *Lent*, *Whitsun-week*, the third Week in *September*, and the third Week in *Advent*; and they are called *Ember-weeks* from the Custom of our Forefathers, of fasting at that Time in Sackcloth and Ashes, or from eating nothing but Cakes baked under the *Embers*, and from thence called *Ember-bread*.

Q. Why has the Church appointed these Fasts of the *Ember-days* at the four Seasons of the Year?

A. 1st, That no Part of the Year might pass without offering to God the Tribute of a penitential Fast. 2^{dly}, That we might beg his Blessing on the Fruits of the Earth, and give him Thanks for those which we have already received. 3^{dly}, That all the Faithful might join at these Times in Prayer and Fasting, to obtain of God worthy Pastors; these being the Times of their Ordination. Thus the Primitive Christians fasted at the Times of the Ordination of their Ministers, *Acts* xiii. 2 and 3. and *Chap.* xiv. 22.

Q. Why does the Church fast upon the *Eves* or *Vigils* of most Holidays?

A. To prepare her Children by Mortification and Penance for the worthily celebrating those Days.

Q. Why do we fast upon *Fridays*?

A. Because our Lord suffer'd for us upon a *Friday*. From this Rule of fasting upon *Fridays* we except the *Fridays* in *Christmas-time*, as also those that occur betwixt *Easter* and *Whitsuntide*, by reason of the Joy of those Solemnities, and of our having *Christ* after his Resurrection with us, according to that of our Lord, *St. Mark* ii. 19. *Can the children of the bride-chamber fast while the bridegroom is with them? As long as they have the bridegroom with them they cannot fast.* However, tho' we don't fast on

on those Days, yet we abstain from Flesh; as we do also upon the *Sundays* in *Lent*, which are excepted from the Rule of Fasting: But if *Christmas-day* occur upon a *Friday* or *Saturday*, we neither fast nor abstain.

Q. What is the Meaning of the three *Rogation-days*?

A. The *Monday*, *Tuesday* and *Wednesday* before *Ascension-day* are called the three *Rogation-days*, or Days of solemn Supplication and Prayer. On these Days we keep Abstinence, and in every Parish we go in Procession, singing the Litanies, to beg God's Blessing upon the Fruits of the Earth, and to be preserved from Pestilences, Famines, &c. Upon the same Account we keep Abstinence on the Day of *St. Mark*, *April 25.* with the like solemn Supplications and Litanies.

Q. And what is the Meaning of keeping Abstinence upon *Saturdays*?

A. Because *Saturday* was the Day that our Lord lay dead in the Monument, and a Day of Mourning to his Disciples. This Abstinence is also a proper Preparation for the Solemnity of the Lord's Day.

N. B. That in the *East*, instead of the *Saturday* they fast upon the *Wednesday*, as being the Day on which the *Jews* held their Council against *Christ*, and on which he was sold by *Judas*.

C H A P. XXII.

Of the Church-Office, or the Canonical Hours of Prayer in the Catholick Church.

Q. WHAT do you mean by the *Church-Office*?

A. It is a Form of Prayer, consisting of Psalms, Lessons, Hymns, &c. used by all the Clergy, and by the Religious of both Sexes in the Catholick Church.

Church. This Office is divided into seven Parts, commonly called the *Seven Canonical Hours*, according to the different Stages or Stations of *Christ's* Passion, viz. the *Mattins*, or Midnight-Office, to which are annexed the *Lauds*, or Morning-Praises of God; the *First*, *Third*, *Sixth* and *Ninth* Hours of Prayer, commonly called *Prime*, *Terce*, *Sext* and *None*; the *Vespers*, or Even-song, and the *Complin*. All these are duly performed by the Clergy and Religious every Day, according to that of the Royal Prophet, *Psalms* cxviii. *Seven times in the day I gave praise to thee.*

Q. Have you any Warrant in Scripture for these different Hours of Prayer?

A. Yes: As to the *Midnight-Office*, King David tells us, *Psalms* cxviii. that he arose at midnight to confess to God; and we find that St. Paul and Silas, even in Prison, prayed at Midnight, and sung Praises to God, *Acts* xvi. 25.

As for the *Lauds*, or Praises of God at Break of Day, they are also recommended to us by the Example of the *Psalmist*, *Psalms* lxii. *O God, my God, to thee do I watch from the morning light*; and by the Admonition of the Wise-man, *Wisdom* xvi. 28. *That we ought to get up before the sun to bless God, and at the rising of light to adore him.*

Of *Prime*, or the first Hour of Prayer at Sun-rising, we may understand that of the Royal Prophet, *Psalms* v. *In the morning thou shalt hear my voice, &c.* At *Terce*, or the third Hour of Prayer, it was that the Apostles received the Holy Ghost, *Acts* ii. 15. At *Sext*, or the sixth Hour, St. Peter was praying when he was called by a Vision to open the Church to the Gentiles, *Acts* x. 9. And we read of the same St. Peter with St. John going up to the Temple to the *Ninth Hour of Prayer*, *Acts* iii. 1. For *Vespers* or Even-song, and *Complin*, which are Evening-Prayer, we have the Example of the Royal Prophet,

Prophet, *Pſalm liv. In the evening, and the morning, and at noon-day, I will ſpeak and declare, and he will hear my voice.* Hence we find, that the Night-Office, the Morning-Praises, the third, fixth and ninth Hours of Prayer, and the Even-song, were, among the Primitive Chriſtians, regularly obſerved, not only by the Clergy, but alſo by the reſt of the Faithful; to which the Religious afterwards added the *Prime* and *Complin*.

Q. Can you give me a ſhort Scheme of theſe Canonical Hours of Prayer, according to the *Roman Breviary*?

A. *Mattins* begin with the *Lord's-Prayer*, the *Hail Mary*, and the *Apoſtles Creed*: Then after a *Verſicle* or two, to call for God's Aſſiſtance, and the *Gloria Patri*, &c. follows the 94th *Pſalm* (*aliàs* 95.) by which we invite one another to praiſe and adore God. Then comes a Hymn, which is followed by the *Pſalms* with their proper Anthems, and the *Leſſons* of the Day, with their *Reſponſories*. In the *Mattins* for *Sunday* we read eighteen *Pſalms*, and nine *Leſſons*: On *Festivals* and *Saints Days* we read nine *Pſalms* and nine *Leſſons* divided into three *Nocturns*: On *Ferial*, or common Days, we read twelve *Pſalms* and three *Leſſons*. The *Pſalms* are ſo diſtributed, that in the Week we go through the whole *Pſalter*: The *Leſſons* are partly taken out of the *Scriptures* of the *Old* and *New Teſtament*, partly out of the *Acts* of the *Saints*, and the *Writings* and *Homilies* of the *Holy Fathers*. Upon *Festival Days*, and during the whole *Paschal Time*, and upon all *Sundays* from *Eaſter* to *Advent*, and from *Chriſtmas* till *Septuageſima*, we cloſe the *Mattins* with the *Te Deum*.

In the *Lauds* we recite ſeven *Pſalms*, and one of the *Scripture Canticles*, with their reſpective *Anthems*, and a *Hymn*, then the *Canticle Benedictus*, with the *Prayer* or *Prayers* of the Day: And in the
End

212 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

End an Anthem and Prayer of the blessed Virgin Mary.

The *Prime* begins with the *Pater, Ave* and *Creed*, *Deus in adjutorium, &c. Gloria Patri, &c.* After which there follows a Morning Hymn, then the 53d *Psalms* (*aliàs* 54th) with a Part of the 118th (*aliàs* 119th) to which on *Sundays* is prefixed the 117th *Psalms*, and subjoined the *Athanasian Creed*. Then follows an Anthem, a *Capitulum*, or short Lesson, with its Responsory, and divers Prayers, to beg God's Grace for the following Day.

Terce, Sext and *None*, begin with *Pater, Ave, &c.* and consist each of them of a proper Hymn, and six Divisions of the 118th *Psalms*: Which excellent *Psalms* the Church would have her Clergy daily recite, because every Verse of it contains the Praises of God's holy Law and Commandments, or excites the Soul to the Love and Esteem thereof; or, in fine, prays for the Grace to fulfill the same. After the *Psalms*, follows an Anthem; then a short Lesson, Responsory and Prayer: And each Hour is concluded with the *Pater noster*.

Vespers, or *Even-song*, are begun also with *Pater, Ave, &c.* and consist of five *Psalms*, with their Anthems, a short Chapter, or Lesson, a Hymn, and the *Magnificat*, or Canticle of the blessed Virgin Mary, with its proper Anthem, and a Collect, or Prayer, to which are usually joined three or four Commemorations, consisting of Anthems, Verses and Prayers.

Complin consists of the Lord's Prayer, the *Confiteor, &c.* four *Psalms*, an Anthem, Hymn, Lesson, Responsory, the Canticle *Nunc dimittis*, with its Anthem, and some short Prayers, which are closed with an Anthem and Prayer of the blessed Virgin, and the *Pater, Ave*, and *Creed*.

C H A P.

C H A P. XXIII.

Of the Festivals of the Catholick Church: Where also of the Holy Week, and the Ceremonies thereof.

Q. WHAT are the Days which the Church commands to be kept holy?

A. 1st, The Sunday, or the *Lord's-Day*, which we observe by Apostolical Tradition instead of the Sabbath. 2^{dly}, The Feasts of our Lord's *Nativity*, or *Christmas-day*; his *Circumcision*, or *New-Year's-day*; the *Epiphany*, or *Twelfth-day*, *Candlemas-day*, or the Day of the *Presentation* of our Lord, and the *Purification* of his blessed Mother; *Easter-day*, or the Day of our Lord's *Resurrection*, with the *Monday* and *Tuesday* following; the Day of our Lord's *Ascension*, *Whitsunday*, or the Day of the Coming of the Holy Ghost, with the *Monday* and *Tuesday* following; *Trinity Sunday*; *Corpus Christi*, or the Feast of the *Blessed Sacrament*; and the Feast of the *Invention*, or *Finding* of the Cross. 3^{dly}, We keep the Days of the *Conception*, *Nativity*, *Annunciation*, and *Assumption* of the blessed Virgin *Mary*. 4^{thly}, We observe the Feast of *All-Saints*; of *St. Michael*, and of all the Angels, commonly called *Michaelmas-day*; of *St. John Baptist*; of *St. Joseph*; of the twelve *Apostles*, of the illustrious Martyrs *St. Stephen* and *St. Lawrence*; of the Holy *Innocents*, and of *St. Anne*, the Mother of the blessed Virgin. 5^{thly}, In this Nation we keep the Days of *St. Thomas of Canterbury*, and of *St. George*, as our special Patrons.

Q. What Warrant have you for keeping the Sunday, preferably to the ancient Sabbath, which was the Saturday?

A. We have for it the Authority of the Catholick Church, and Apostolical Tradition.

Q. Does

Q. Does the Scripture any where command the *Sunday* to be kept for the *Sabbath*?

A. The Scripture commands us to hear the Church, *St. Matt. xviii. 17.* *St. Luke x. 16.* and to hold fast the Traditions of the Apostles, *2 Thess. ii. 15.* but the Scripture does not in particular mention this Change of the Sabbath. *St. John* speaks of the *Lord's-day*, *Rev. i. 10.* but he does not tell us what Day of the Week this was, much less does he tell us that this Day was to take place of the Sabbath ordained in the Commandments: *St. Luke* also speaks of the Disciples meeting together to break Bread on the first Day of the Week, *Acts xx. 7.* And *St. Paul*, *1 Cor. xvi. 2.* orders, that on the first Day of the Week the *Corinthians* should lay by in Store what they designed to bestow in Charity on the Faithful in *Judæa*: But neither one nor the other tells us, that this first Day of the Week was to be henceforward the Day of Worship, and the Christian Sabbath: So that in very deed, the best Authority we have for this is the Testimony and Ordinance of the Church. And therefore those who pretend to be so religious Observers of the *Sunday*, whilst they take no notice of other Festivals ordain'd by the same Church-Authority, shew that they act by Humour, and not by Reason and Religion; since *Sundays* and *Holidays* all stand upon the same Bottom, viz. The Ordinance of the Church.

Q. But ought it not to be enough to keep one Day in the Week, according as it was prescribed in the Commandments, without enjoining any other Festivals or Holidays; especially since it is expressly said in the Commandment, *Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work*, *Exod. xx. 9*?

A. God did not think it enough in the *Old-Testament* to appoint the weekly Sabbath, which was the *Saturday*; but moreover ordained several other Festivals, commanding them to be kept holy, and forbidding

forbidding all servile Work on them : As the Feast of the *Pasch*, or *Passover* ; the Feast of *Pentecost* ; the Feast of the Sound of *Trumpets*, on the first Day of the tenth Month ; the Feast of *Atonement*, on the tenth Day of the same Month ; the Feast of *Tabernacles*, on the fifteenth Day of the same Month, &c. See the 23d Chapter of *Leviticus*. So that when 'tis said in the Law, *Six days shalt thou labour*, &c. this must needs be understood, in Case no Holidays came in the Week ; otherwise the Law would contradict itself.

Q. But does not St. *Paul* reprehend the *Galatians*, Gal. iv. 10, 11. for *observing Days, and Months, and Times, and Years* ?

A. This is to be understood either of the superstitious Observation of *lucky* or *unlucky Days*, &c. or, as it is far more probable from the whole Context, of the Observation of the *Jewish Festivals* ; which with the old Law were now abolished ; but were taken up by the *Galatians*, together with Circumcision, upon the Recommendation of certain false Teachers : But far was it from the Design of the Apostle to reprehend their Observation of *Christian Solemnities*, either of the Lord's Day, or of other Festivals observed by Apostolical Tradition, or recommended by the Authority of the Church of *Christ*. For these come to us recommended by *Christ* himself, who says to the Pastors of his Church, *He that heareth you, heareth me, and he that despiseth you, despiseth me*, St. Luke x. 16.

Q. What was the Reason why the weekly Sabbath was changed from the *Saturday* to the *Sunday* ?

A. Because our Lord fully accomplished the Work of our *Redemption* by rising from the Dead on a *Sunday*, and by sending down the Holy Ghost on a *Sunday* : As therefore the Work of our *Redemption* was a greater Work than that of our *Creation*, so the

the primitive Church thought the Day, in which this Work was compleatly finished, was more worthy her Religious Observation than that in which God rested from the *Creation*.

Q. But has the Church a Power to make any Alterations in the Commandments of God?

A. The Commandments of God, as far as they contain his eternal Law, are unalterable and indispensable; but as to whatever was only ceremonial, they cease to oblige, since the *Mosaick* Law was abrogated by *Christ's* Death. Hence, as far as the Commandment obliges us to set aside some Part of our Time for the Worship and Service of our Creator, it is an unalterable and unchangeable Precept of the eternal Law, in which the Church cannot dispense: But for as much as it prescribes the Seventh Day in particular for this Purpose, it is no more than a ceremonial Precept of the old Law, which obligeth not Christians. And therefore, instead of the Seventh Day, and other Festivals appointed by the old Law, the Church has prescribed the *Sundays* and Holidays to be set apart for God's Worship; and these we are now obliged to keep, in Consequence of God's Commandment, instead of the ancient Sabbath.

Q. What was the Reason of the Institution of other Festivals, besides the Lord's Day?

A. That we might celebrate the Memory of the chief Mysteries of our Redemption; that we might give God Thanks for all his Mercies, and glorify him in his Saints.

Q. In what Manner ought a Christian to spend the *Sundays* and Holidays?

A. In religious Duties; such as assisting at the great Sacrifice of the Church, and other publick Prayers; reading good Books, and hearing the Word of God, &c.

Q. Why

Q. Why does the Church prohibit all servile Works upon *Sundays* or *Holidays*?

A. That the Faithful may have nothing to take them off from attending to God's Service and the Sanctification of their Souls upon these Days. And certainly a Christian that has any religious Thoughts, can never think much of devoting now and then a Day, to that great Business, for which alone he came into this World.

Q. What is the Meaning of the Institution of *Christmas*?

A. To celebrate the Birth of *Christ*; to give God Thanks for sending his Son into this World for our Redemption; and that we may upon this Occasion endeavour to study and to learn those great Lessons of Poverty of Spirit, of Humility, and of Self-denial, which the Son of God teaches us from the Crib of *Bethlehem*.

Q. What is the Reason that on *Christmas-day* Mass is said at Midnight?

A. Because *Christ* was born at Midnight.

Q. Why are three Masses said by every Priest upon *Christmas-day*?

A. This ancient Observance may be understood to denote three different Births of *Christ*; his Eternal Birth from his Father, his Temporal Birth from his Mother, and his Spiritual Birth in the Hearts of good Christians.

Q. Are all the Faithful obliged to hear three Masses on *Christmas-day*?

A. No, they are not; tho' it would be very commendable so to do.

Q. What is the Meaning of the Time of *Advent* before *Christmas*?

A. 'Tis a Time set aside by the Church for Devotion and Penance; and is called *Advent* or *Coming*, because in it we prepare ourselves for the worthy celebrating the Mercies of our Lord's first

Coming; that so we may escape the Rigour of his Justice, at his second *Coming*.

Q. What is the Meaning of *New Year's-day*?

A. 'Tis the Octave of *Christmas*, and the Day of our Lord's Circumcision, when he first began to shed his innocent Blood for us: And on this Day we ought to study how we may imitate him by a Spiritual Circumcision of our Hearts.

Q. What is the Meaning of the *Epiphany*, or *Twelfth-Day*?

A. 'Tis a Day kept in Memory of the Coming of the wise Men from the *East*, to adore our Saviour in his Infancy: And 'tis called *Epiphany*, or *Manifestation*, because our Lord then began to manifest himself to the Gentiles. The Devotion of this Day is to give God Thanks for our Vocation to the true Faith, and, like the wise Men, to make our Offerings of Gold, Frankincense and Myrrh; that is, of Charity, Prayer and Mortification, to our new-born Saviour. On this Day the Church also celebrates the Memory of the Baptism of *Christ*, and of his first Miracle of changing Water into Wine in *Cana of Galilee*.

Q. What is the Meaning of *Candlemas-day*?

A. 'Tis the Day of the Purification of the Blessed Virgin after Child-bearing, and of the Presentation of our Lord in the Temple; when the just Man *Simeon*, who had a Promise from the Holy Ghost of seeing the Saviour of the World before his Death, received him into his Arms, and proclaim'd him to be the Light of the Gentiles. Upon this Account, the Church upon this Day makes a solemn Procession with lighted Candles, which are blessed by the Priest before Mass, and carried in the Hands of the Faithful, as an Emblem of *Christ*, who is the true Light of the World. And from this Ceremony this Day is called *Candlemas*, or the Mass of Candles.

Q. What

Q. What is the Meaning of the *Annunciation* or *Lady-day*, the 25th of *March*?

A. 'Tis the Day of our Lord's Incarnation, when he was first conceived by the Holy Ghost in the Womb of the Blessed Virgin *Mary*: And 'tis call'd the *Annunciation*, from the Message brought from Heaven on this Day to the Virgin by the Angel *Gabriel*.

Q. What is the Meaning of the *Holy Week* before *Easter*?

A. 'Tis a Week of more than ordinary Devotion in Honour of the Passion of *Christ*.

Q. What is the Meaning of *Palm-sunday*?

A. It is the Day on which our Lord being about to suffer for us, enter'd into *Jerusalem* sitting upon an Ass, as had been foretold by the Prophet *Zachariah*, Chap. ix. Ver. 9. and was received with *Hosanna's* of Joy, accompanied by a great Multitude, bearing Branches of Palms in their Hands. In Memory of which we go in Procession round the Church on this Day, bearing also Branches of Palms in our Hands, to celebrate the Triumphs of our victorious King.

Q. What is the Meaning of the *Tenebræ* Office in Holy Week?

A. The *Mattins* of *Christ's* Passion, which formerly used to be said in the Night, and are now said in the Evening, on *Wednesday*, *Thursday* and *Friday* in Holy Week, are called the *Tenebræ* Office, from the *Latin* Word, which signifies Darkness; because towards the latter End of the Office all the Lights are extinguish'd, in Memory of the Darkness which cover'd all the Earth, while *Christ* was hanging upon the Cross: And at the End of the Office a Noise is made, to represent the Earthquake and Splitting of the Rocks, which happened at the Time of our Lord's Death.

Q. What is the Meaning of *Maundy-Thursday*?

A. It is the Day on which *Christ* first instituted the Blessed Sacrament; and began his Passion by his bitter Agony and bloody Sweat. From the *Gloria in excelsis* of the Mass of this Day, till the Mass of *Easter Eve*, our Bells are silent throughout the Catholick Church, because we are now mourning for the Passion of *Christ*. Our Altars are also uncovered and stript of all their Ornaments, because *Christ* our true Altar hung naked upon the Cross. On this Day also Prelates and Superiors wash in the Church the Feet of their Subjects, after the Example of our Lord, *St. John xiii.*

Q. What is the Meaning of visiting the Sepulchres upon *Maundy-Thursday*?

A. The Place where the Blessed Sacrament is reserved in the Church in order for the Office of *Good-Friday* (on which Day there is no Consecration) is by the People called the *Sepulchre*, as representing by Anticipation the Burial of *Christ*. And where there are many Churches the Faithful make their Stations to visit our Lord in these Sepulchres, and meditate on the different Stages of his Passion.

Q. What is the Meaning of *Good-Friday*?

A. It is the Day on which *Christ* died for us upon the Cross. The Devotion proper for this Day, and for the whole Time in which we celebrate *Christ's* Passion, is to meditate upon the Sufferings of our Redeemer, to study the excellent Lessons of Virtue, which he teaches us by his Example in the whole Course of his Passion; especially his Humility, Meekness, Patience, Obedience, Resignation, &c. and above all, to learn his Hatred of Sin, and his Love for us; that we may also learn to hate Sin, which nailed him to the Cross; and to love him that has loved us even unto Death.

Q. What is the Meaning of creeping to the Cross and kissing it on *Good-Friday*?

A. 'Tis

A. 'Tis to expresse by this Reverence outwardly exhibited to the Cross, our Veneration and Love for him, who upon this Day died for us on the Cross.

Q. What is the Meaning of *Holy-Saturday*?

A. 'Tis *Easter Eve*, and therefore in the Mass of this Day the Church resumes her *Alleluia's* of Joy, which she had intermitted during the Penitential Time of *Septuagesima* and *Lent*. On this Day is blessed the *Paschal Candle*, as an Emblem of *Christ*, and his Light and Glory; which burns during the Mass from *Easter* till Ascension, that is, during the whole Time that *Christ* remain'd upon Earth after his Resurrection. This Day and *Whitsun-Eve* were anciently the Days deputed by the Church for solemn Baptism, and therefore on this Day the Fonts are solemnly bless'd.

Q. What is the Meaning of *Easter*?

A. 'Tis the chief Feast of the whole Year, as being the Solemnity of our Lord's Resurrection. The Devotion of this Time is to rejoice in *Christ's* Victory over Death and Hell; and to labour to imitate his Resurrection by arising from the Death of Sin to the Life of Grace.

Q. What is the Meaning of *Ascension-day*?

A. 'Tis the yearly Memory of *Christ's* ascending into Heaven, forty Days after his rising again from the Dead; and therefore 'tis a Festival of Joy, as well by reason of the Triumphs of our Saviour on this Day and the Exaltation of our human Nature, by him now exalted above the Angels; as likewise because our Saviour has taken Possession of that Kingdom in our Name, and is preparing a Place for us; and in the mean Time he there discharges the Office of our High-Priest and our Advocate, by constantly representing his Death and Passion to his Father in our Behalf. 'Tis also a Part of the Devotion of this Day, to labour to dis-

engage our Hearts from this Earth and earthly Things, to remember that we are but Strangers and Pilgrims here, and to aspire after our heavenly Country, where *Christ* our Treasure is gone before us, in order to draw our Hearts thither after him.

Q. What is the most proper Devotion for the Time between *Ascension* and *Whitsunday*?

A. To prepare ourselves for the Holy Ghost, as the Apostles did, by Retirement and Prayer, and to purify our Souls from Sin, especially from all Rancour and Impurity.

Q. What is the Meaning of the Solemnity of *Whitsuntide* or *Pentecost*?

A. It was a Festival observed in the Old Law, in Memory of the Law having been given on that Day in Thunder and Lightning; and it is observed by us now in Memory of the New Law, having been promulgated on this Day by the Holy Ghost's Descent upon the Apostles in the Shape of Tongues of Fire. The proper Devotion of this Time is to invite the Holy Ghost into our Souls by fervent Prayer, and to give ourselves up to his Divine Influences.

Q. What is the Meaning of *Trinity-Sunday*?

A. The first Sunday after *Pentecost* is called *Trinity-Sunday*, because on that Day we particularly commemorate that great Mystery of three Persons in one God, and glorify the Blessed Trinity for the whole Work of our Redemption, which we have celebrated in the foregoing Festivals.

Q. What is the Meaning of the Solemnity of *Corpus Christi*?

A. 'Tis a Festival observed by the Church, to give God Thanks for his Goodness and Mercy in the Institution of the Blessed Sacrament; and to this End are ordained the Processions and Benedictions of this *Octave*.

Q. What

Q. What is the Meaning of the Feast of the *Invention or Finding of the Cross*, May the 3d?

A. 'Tis a Day kept in Memory of the miraculous Finding of the Cross of *Christ* by the Empress *Helen*, Mother to *Constantine the Great*; and the chief Devotion of the Church upon this Day, as well as upon that of the *Exaltation of the Cross*, Sep. 14. is to celebrate the victorious Death and Passion of our Redeemer.

Q. What are the Days observed by the Church in Honour of our Lady the Blessed Virgin *Mary*?

A. Besides her *Purification* and *Annunciation*, of which we have already spoken, we keep the Day of her *Conception*, Dec. 8; the Day of her *Birth* or *Nativity*, Sep. 8; and the Day of her happy Passage to Eternity, Aug. 15; which we call her *Assumption*, it being a pious Tradition that she was taken up to Heaven both in Body and Soul, tho' not till after she had paid the common Debt by Death. We also keep the Day of her *Presentation* or *Consecration* to God in the Temple, Nov. 21. and of her *Visitation*, Aug. 2; but these are not Holidays of Obligation.

Q. What is the Meaning of keeping the Festivals of the Blessed Virgin *Mary*, and of other Saints?

A. 1st, To glorify God in his Saints, and to give him Thanks for the Graces and Glory bestowed upon them. 2^{dly}, To communicate with these Citizens of Heaven, and to procure their Prayers for us. 3^{dly}, To encourage ourselves to imitate their Examples.

Q. Does not the Church also observe some Days in Honour of the Angels?

A. We observe *Michaelmas-day*, in Honour of St. *Michael* the Archangel, and of all the heavenly Legions. We also commemorate an illustrious *Apparition* of St. *Michael*, May 8; and we keep the Day of our *Angels Guardians*, Octab. 2. to give God

Thanks for giving his Angels a Charge over us ; tho' these two latter are not Days of Obligation.

2. How do you prove that we have Angels for our Guardians ?

A. From St. *Matt. xviii. 10.* Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones ; for I say unto you, that in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father that is in heaven. *Heb. i. 14.* Are they not all ministring spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation ?

C H A P. XXIV.

Of the Invocation of Angels and Saints.

2. **WHAT** is the Doctrine and Practice of the Catholick Church, with regard to the Invocation of Angels and Saints ?

2. We hold it to be pious and profitable to apply ourselves to them, in the Way of desiring them to pray to God for us ; but not so as to address ourselves to them, as if they were the Authors or Disposers of Pardon, Grace, or Salvation ; or as if they had any Power to help us independently of God's Good-will and Pleasure.

2. But in some of the Addresses made to the Saints and Angels, I find Petitions for *Mercy, Aid, or Defence* ; what say you to that ?

A. The Meaning of those Addresses, as far as they are authorised by the Church, is no other than to beg *Mercy* of the Saints in this Sense, that they would pity and *compassionate* our Misery, and would pray for us. In like manner, when we beg their *Aid* and *Defence*, we mean to beg the *Aid* and *Defence* of their Prayers ; and that the Angels, to whom God has given a Charge over us, would assist us and defend us against the Angels of Darkness.

And

And this is no more than what the Protestant Church asks in the Collect for *Michaelmas-day*, praying, that *as the holy angels always serve God in heaven, so by his appointment they may succour and defend us upon earth.*

Q. Have you any Reason to believe that it is pious and profitable to beg the Prayers of the Saints and Angels?

Q. We have the same Reason to desire the Saints and Angels to pray for us, and to believe it profitable so to do, as we have to desire the Prayers of God's Servants here upon Earth; or as *St. Paul* had to desire so often the Prayers of the Faithful, to whom he wrote his Epistles. See *Rom. xv. 30. Ephes. vi. 18, 19. 1 Thess. v. 25. Heb. xiii. 13.* For if it be pious and profitable to desire the Prayers of Sinners here upon Earth (for all Men here upon Earth must acknowledge themselves Sinners) how can it be otherwise than pious and profitable to desire the Prayers of the Saints and Angels in Heaven? Is it that the Saints and Angels in Heaven have less *Charity* for us than the Faithful upon Earth? This cannot be, since *Charity never faileth*, *1 Cor. xiii. 8.* and instead of being diminished, is increased in Heaven. Or is it that the Saints and Angels in Heaven have less *Interest* with God than the Faithful upon Earth? Neither can this be said; for as they are far more holy and pure, and more closely united to his Divine Majesty than the Faithful upon Earth, so must their *Interest* in Heaven be proportionably greater. Or is it, in fine, that the Saints and Angels have no Knowledge of what passes upon Earth, and therefore are not to be addressed to for their Prayers? Neither is this true, since our Lord assures us, that *there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth*, *St. Luke xv. 10.* Which could not

be if the Citizens of Heaven knew nothing of what passes here upon Earth.

Q. Have you any Instances in Scripture of the Angels or Saints praying for us, or offering up our Prayers to God?

A. Yes: Zachar. i. 12. *The angel of the Lord answered and said, O Lord of hosts, how long wilt thou not have mercy on Jerusalem, and on the cities of Judah, against which thou hast had indignation these threescore and ten years.* Rev. v. 8. *The four and twenty elders fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints.* Rev. viii. 3, 4. *And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given unto him much incense, that he should offer it with the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar which was before the throne. And the smoke of the Incense, with the prayers of the saints, ascended up before God out of the angels hand.*

Q. Have you any Instances in Scripture of asking the Blessing of Prayers or Angels or Saints?

A. Gen. xlviii. 15, 16. *God, before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac did walk, the God which fed me all my life long until this day, the angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads.* Rev. i. 4. *Grace be unto you, and peace from him which is, and which was, and which is to come, and from the seven spirits which are before his throne.* But if there had been no Instances in Scripture, both Reason and Religion must inform us, that there cannot possibly be any Harm in desiring the Prayers of God's Servants, whether they be in Heaven or upon Earth.

Q. At least there is no Command in Scripture for desiring the Prayers of the Angels or Saints; what say you to this?

A. The Scripture did not command St. Paul to desire the Prayers of the Romans; nor does it command

mand a Child to ask his Father's Blessing, nor the Faithful to kneel at their Prayers, or pull off their Hats when they go to Church; yet these Things are no less commendable, as being agreeable to the Principles of Piety and Religion; and so it is with Regard to the Invocation of the Saints and Angels. In the mean Time, we are sure that there is no Law nor Command in Scripture against any of these Things; and consequently, that they are guilty of a crying Injustice who accuse us of a Crime for begging the Prayers of the Saints; for *where there is no law, there is no transgression*, Rom. iv. 15.

Q. Does not God say, *Isaiah xlii. 8. I will not give my glory to another?*

A. Yes: But that makes nothing against desiring the Saints to pray to God for us; for this is no more robbing God of his Honour, than when we desire the Prayers of the Faithful here below.

Q. But does not it argue a Want of Confidence in God's Mercy to have Recourse to the Prayers of the Saints?

A. No, by no Means; no more than it argues a Want of Confidence in God's Mercy to have Recourse to the Prayers of our Brethren upon Earth. The Truth is, tho' God be infinitely merciful, and ready to hear our Prayers, yet it is our Duty, and his Will, that we should neglect no Means by which we may be forwarded in our Progress to a happy Eternity; and therefore 'tis agreeable to his Divine Majesty, that we should both pray ourselves without ceasing, and that we should also procure the Prayers of our Brethren, whether in Heaven or on Earth, that he may have the Honour and we the Profit of so many more Prayers.

Q. Have you any Proof or Instance in Scripture that God will more readily hear his Servants when they interceed for us, than if we alone were to address ourselves to him?

A. Yes:

A. Yes: *Job* xlii. 7, 8. *The Lord said to Eliphaz the Temanite, My wrath is kindled against thee, and against thy two friends; for ye have not spoken of me the thing that is right, as my servant Job hath. Therefore take unto you now seven bullocks, and seven rams, and go to my servant Job, and offer up for yourselves a burnt-offering, and my servant Job shall pray for you, for him will I accept: lest I deal with you after your folly, in that ye have not spoken of me the thing that is right, like my servant Job.*

Q. But is it not an Inquiry to the *Mediatorship* of *Christ* to desire the *Intercession* of the *Angels* and *Saints*?

A. No more than when we desire the *Intercession* of *God's Servants* here; because we desire no more of the *Saints* than we do of our *Brethren* upon *Earth*, that is, we only desire of them to pray for us, and with us, to him that is both our *Lord* and their *Lord*, by the *Merits* of his Son *Jesus Christ*, who is both our *Mediator* and their *Mediator*.

Q. Does not *St. Paul* say, *1 Tim. ii. 5.* *There is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus*; and does not this exclude the *Intercession* of the *Saints*?

A. The Words immediately following are, *Who gave himself a ransom for all*; so that the plain Meaning of the Text is, that *Christ* alone is our *Mediator of Redemption*. But as for *Intercession* and *Prayer*, as nothing hinders us from seeking the *Mediation* of the *Faithful* upon *Earth* to pray for us, so nothing ought to hinder us from seeking the like from the *Saints* and *Angels*; tho' neither the one nor the other can obtain any Thing for us any other Way than through *Jesus Christ*, who is the only *Mediator*, who stands in Need of no other to recommend his *Petitions*.

Q. Have

Q. Have you any Thing else to add in Favour of the Catholick Doctrine and Practise of the Invocation of Saints?

A. Yes: 1st, That 'tis agreeable to the *Communion of Saints* which we profess in the Creed, and of which the Apostles speaks, *Heb. xii. 22, 23, 24. Ye are come unto Mount Sion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels; to the general assembly and church of the first-born which are written in heaven, and to God the judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect, and to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, &c.*

2^{dly}, That it is agreeable to the Doctrine and Practice of the ancient Fathers, Saints, and Doctors of the Church; and this by the Confession even of our Adversaries. *I confess*, says Mr. Fulk, in his *Joindre to Bristow*, p. 5. that Ambrose, Augustine, and Hierome held Invocation of Saints to be lawful; and upon 2 Pet. i. §. 3. fol. 443. that in Nazianzen, Basil and Chrysostome is Mention of Invocation of Saints; and that Theodoret also speaks of Prayers to his Martyrs: And the Centuriators of Magdeburg, in their 4th Century, Col. 295. alledge several Examples of Prayers to Saints in St. Athanasius, St. Basil, St. Gregory Nazianzen, St. Ambrose Prudentius, St. Epiphanius, and St. Ephrem. All which Fathers, together with St. Augustine, St. Jerome, &c. are also charged by Mr. Brightman [in *Apocalypse*, c. 14. p. 382.] of establishing Idolatry by Invocation of Saints, worshipping of Relicks, and such like wicked Superstitions. And Mr. Thorndike, in *Epilog. Par. 3. p. 358.* writes thus: "It is confessed, that the Lights both of the Greek and Latin Church, St. Basil, St. Gregory Nazianzen, St. Gregory, Nyssene, St. Ambrose, St. Jerome, St. Augustine, St. Chrysostome, St. Cyril of Jerusalem, St. Cyril of Alexandria, Theodoret, St. Fulgentius, St. Gregory the Great, St. Leo, or more, or rather
" all

230 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

“all after that Time, have spoken to the Saints,
“and desired their Assistance.” See *Melancthon*,
quartâ Parte Operum, p. 218; *Kemnitius*, *Exam.*
Par. 3. p. 200; *Beza*, in *Præf. Nov. Test.* Arch-
bishop *Whitgift*’s Defence against *Cartwright*, p. 473;
and *Daille*, *Advers. Lat. Tradit.* p. 53.

3dly, That it stands upon the same Bottom as all
other Christian Truths, viz. upon the Authority of
the Church of Christ, which the Scripture com-
mands us to hear, with which both Christ and his
Holy Spirit will remain for ever, and against which
the Gates of Hell cannot prevail. See St. *Matt.*
xvi. 18. xviii. 17. xxviii. 20; St. *Luke* x. 16; St.
John xiv. 16, 17, 26. and xvi. 13.

4thly, That it has been authorized by God him-
self, by innumerable Miracles in every Age, wrought
in Favour of those that have desired the Prayers
and Intercession of the Saints. See St. *Augustine*’s
City of God, L. 22, C. 8.

Q. But what do you say to *Coloss.* ii. 18. where
St. *Paul* condemns the Religion or Worship of An-
gels; and to *Rev.* xix. 10. where the Angel refused
to be worshipped by St. *John*?

A. I say, that neither one nor the other makes
any Thing against desiring the Angels or Saints to
pray to God for us; for this is not giving them any
Adoration or *divine Worship*, no more than when we
desire the Prayers of one another. Now it was *Ado-
ration* or *divine Worship* which the Angel refused to
receive from St. *John*, *Rev.* xix. *I fell at his feet to
worship him*, says the Apostle; and it was a *supersti-
tious Worship*, and not the desiring of the Prayers of
the Angels, which is condemned by St. *Paul*, *Col.* ii.
A *superstitious Worship*, I say, either of bad Angels,
of whom the Apostle speaks, *ver.* 15. or, if of good
Angels, in such a Manner as to leave Christ not
holding the head, says the Apostle, *ver.* 19. Such
was the Worship which many of the *Philosophers*
(against

(against whom St. *Paul* warns the *Colossians*, ver. 8.) paid to Angels or Demons, to whom they offered Sacrifices, as to the necessary Carriers of Intelligence between the Gods and Men. Such also was the Worship which *Simon Magus*, and many of the *Gnosticks* paid to the Angels, whom they held to be the Creators of the World. See *Theodoret*, L. 5. *Har. Fab. C.* 9.

Q. What do you think of making Addresses to the Angels or Saints upon our Knees? Is not this giving them divine Worship?

A. No more than when we desire the Blessing of our Fathers or Mothers upon our Knees; which is indeed the very Case, since what we ask of our Parents, when we desire their Blessing, is, that they would pray to God for us; and this same we ask of the Angels and Saints.

Q. But is it not giving to the Angels and Saints the Attributes of God, viz. *Omniscience* and *Omnipresence*, that is, *knowing all Things*, and *being every where*, if you suppose that they can hear or know all our Addresses made to them?

A. No; we neither believe the Angels and Saints to be *every where*, nor yet to have the *Knowledge of all Things*; tho' we make no Question but they know our Prayers, since the Scripture assures us that they offer them up to God, *Rev.* v. 8. and viii.

3, 4.

If you ask me how they can know our Prayers without *being every where*, and *knowing all Things*? I answer, that there are many Ways by which they may know them. 1st, The *Angels* may know them by being amongst us in Quality of our Guardians; and the *Saints* may know them by the *Angels*, whose Conversation they enjoy.

2^{dly}, Both Angels and Saints may see them and know them in God, whom they continually see and enjoy; or by Revelation from God, as in God they

232 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

they see the Repentance of Sinners, St. *Luke* xv. 10. For they that see God Face to Face, by the *Light of Glory*, discern all his divine Attributes, and in them innumerable Secrets impenetrable to Nature: And therefore, tho' they themselves are not *every where*, yet, by contemplating him that sees and knows all Things, they have a vast Extent of Knowledge of Things that pass here below. *In thy light shall we see light*, says the Royal Prophet, *Psalms xxxv. (alias xxxvi.) 9.* And *we shall be like to him*, says St. *John*, 1 *John* iii. 2. *for we shall see him as he is.* For *now we see*, says St. *Paul*, 1 *Cor.* xiii. 12. *through a glass darkly, but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know, even as also I am known.*

3dly, Both Angels and Saints may know our Petitions addressed to them, by the ordinary Way by which Spirits speak to one another, and hear one another; and that is, by our directing our Thoughts to them with a Desire of opening our Minds to them; for we can no otherwise understand or explain the Speech and Conversation of Spirits, who having neither Tongues nor Ears must converse together by the directing of their Thoughts to one another. Now this Kind of Conversation by the Thoughts may extend to ever so great a Distance, as being independent on Sound, and all other corporeal Qualities, and consequently independent on Distance.

Besides all this, the Saints, whilst they were here upon Earth knew very well the Miseries we labour under in this Veil of Tears: They also knew that good Christians earnestly desire to be helped by the Prayers of God's Saints; and as they knew this whilst they were upon Earth, so they know it still. Consequently, as their Charity prompts them to pray for the Faithful in general, so 'tis not to be doubted, but they pray more particularly for those who

who
most
Prop
to a
we
know
be p
certa
more
Pray
In
innu
Age
Ang
God
prof
ourse
their
perien
2.
16. th
A.
and P
ly be
their
art ou
ignor
O Lor
mean
passed
openec
as yet
we rea
And
ly unre
who m
to the
ready e

who stand most in Necessity of their Prayers, or most earnestly desire their Prayers; it being the Property of Charity, which is perfect in Heaven, to act in this Manner. Hence it follows, that tho' we were even to suppose, that the Saints did not know in particular our Addresses, yet it would still be profitable to desire their Prayers, because they certainly pray for Christians in general, and for those more particularly, who desire the Help of their Prayers.

In fine, the Experience of 1700 Years, and the innumerable Favours that have been granted in every Age to those that have desired the Prayers of the Angels and Saints, has convinced the Church of God, that this Devotion is both pleasing to God and profitable to us; and therefore we may dispense with ourselves from a curious Enquiry into the Manner of their knowing our Requests, since we find by Experience so great Benefit from them.

Q. Does not the Prophet *Isaiah* say, *Chap. lxiii. 16. that Abraham is ignorant of us?*

A. His Meaning is plain, that the Fatherly Care and Providence of God over his People, was infinitely beyond that of *Abraham* and *Israel*, who were their Parents according to the Flesh. *Doubtless thou art our Father*, says the Prophet, *tho' Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not: thou, O Lord, art our Father, our Redeemer, &c.* In the mean Time, that *Abraham* was not ignorant of what passed amongst his Children (tho' before *Christ* had opened Heaven by his Death, the *Patriarchs* did not as yet enjoy the beatifick Vision) is clear from what we read, *St. Luke xvi. 25, 29.*

And here I cannot but take notice, how strangely unreasonable the Notions of some People are, who make a Scruple of allowing any Knowledge to the Saints and Angels of God, whilst they are ready enough to grant that the Devils both know
our

our Works, and hear the Addreffes of their impious Invokers? as if thefe wretched Spirits of *Darknefs* by *Nature* alone could know more than the Saints, who, befides the *Light of Nature*, enjoy the *Light of Grace and Glory*; or as if thofe Rebels had acquired any greater Degree of Perfection and Knowledge by their Fall, than they would have had if they had remained Angels.

2. But can you prove from Scripture, that the Saints enjoy God in Heaven before the general Refurrection?

A. Yes; this is vifibly the Doctrine of St. Paul, 2 Cor. v. 1. *For we know, that if our earthly houfe of this tabernacle were diffolved, we have a building of God, an houfe not made with hands, eternal in the heavens.* Ver. 6 and 7. *Therefore are always confident, knowing that whilst we are at home in the body, we are abfent from the Lord; (for we walk by faith, and not by fight) we are confident, I fay, and willing rather to be abfent from the body, and to be prefent with the Lord.* Where he vifibly fupposes, that the Souls of the Saints, when let loofe from their Bodies by Death, enter into the *eternal Tabernacles*, are *prefent with the Lord*, and enjoy his Sight. The fame Thing he fupposes. Philip. i. 23, 24. *I am in a ftrait betwixt two, having a defire to depart, and to be with Chrift; which is far better. Nevertheless, to abide in the flefh is more needful for you.*

C H A P. XXV.

Of the Devotion of Catholicks to the blessed Virgin Mary; of her perpetual Virginity; of the Beads, Rosary, and Angelus Domini.

2. **W**HAT is the Meaning of the great Refpect and Devotion of Catholicks to the blessed Virgin *Mary*?

A. It

A. It is grounded, 1st, upon her great Dignity of *Mother of God*, and the close Relation which she has thereby to *Jesus Christ* her Son; for how is it possible to love and honour *Christ* with our whole Heart, and not value and love his blessed Mother?

2^{dly}, It is grounded upon that super-eminent Grace which was bestowed upon her to prepare her for that Dignity; upon Account of which she was saluted by the Angel *Gabriel*, St. *Luke* i. 28. *full of grace* (which the Protestants, who are no great Friends of this ever-blessed Virgin, have chosen rather to translate *highly favoured*;) and both by the Angel, and by St. *Elizabeth*, St. *Luke* i. 42. she is stiled, *Blessed among Women*.

3^{dly}, It is grounded upon her extraordinary Sanctity; for if she was *full of grace* before she conceived in her Womb the Fountain of all Grace, to what a Degree of Sanctity and Grace must she have arrived during so many Years as she lived afterwards? especially since she bore nine Months in her Womb the Author of all Sanctity, and had him thirty Years under her Roof, ever contemplating him and his heavenly Mysteries, St. *Luke* ii. 19 and 51; and on her Part never making any Resistance to the Affluence of his Graces ever flowing in upon her happy Soul.

4^{thly}, It is grounded upon that super-eminent Degree of heavenly Glory with which God has now honoured her, in Proportion to her Grace and Sanctity here upon Earth, and the great Interest she has with her blessed Son, and through him with his heavenly Father.

Q. Is there any Thing in Scripture that insinuates this great Devotion that should be in all Ages to this blessed Virgin?

A. Yes, it was foretold by herself in her Cantic, St. *Luke* i. 48. *Behold from henceforth all generations shall call me blessed.*

Q. Do

Q. Do you then allow divine Honour or Worship to the blessed Virgin *Mary*?

A. No certainly; the Church in this, as in all other Things, keeps the golden Mean between the two Extreame: She condemns those that refuse to honour this blessed Mother of God; but those much more that would give her divine Worship. She thinks no Honour that can be given to any pure Creature too great for this blessed Virgin: But as she knows that there is an infinite Distance still between her and God, she is far from offering Sacrifice to her, or paying her any Worship that belongs to God alone. And whatever Honour she gives the Mother, she refers it to the Glory of the Son, as the chief Motive and End of all her Devotions.

Q. But why do you call the blessed Virgin *the Mother of God*?

A. Because she is truly the Mother of *Jesus Christ*, who is true God and true Man, and consequently she is truly the Mother of God; not by being Mother of the Divinity, but by being Mother of him, who in one and the same Person is both God and Man. Hence she is called by St. *Elizabeth*, *Luke i. The mother of my Lord.*

Q. Why does the Church in her Hymns and Anthems stile the blessed Virgin, *Mother of Grace*, and *Mother of Mercy*?

A. Because she is the Mother of him who is the Fountain of all *Grace* and *Mercy*; and is both most willing by Reason of her super-eminent *Charity*, and most able by her great *Interest* with her Son to obtain *Grace* and *Mercy* for us.

Q. And why is she stiled the *Queen of Heaven*, or the *Queen of Angels and Saints*?

A. Because she is the Mother of the King of *Heaven*, and the greatest of all the *Saints*.

Q. What

Q. What then do you think of those that presume to say she was no more than any other Woman; nor ought to have any Regard or Honour paid to her?

A. Such as these have very little Regard to *Jesus Christ*, whose Mother they treat with so much Contempt.

Q. And what do you think of the Opinion of those that say she had Children by St. *Joseph* after the Birth of our Saviour?

A. This was a Heresy condemned by the Church near fourteen hundred Years ago, as contrary to Apostolical Tradition, and to the very Creed of the Apostles, which styles her *Virgin*. And that indeed she had determined by Vow never to know Man, the Holy Fathers gather from her Words to the Angel, St. Luke i. 34. *How shall this be, for I know not Man?*

Q. Who then were they that are called in the Scripture the *Brethren* of our Saviour?

A. They are named by St. *Mark* vi. 3. *James*, and *Joses* or *Joseph*, and *Jude*, and *Simon* or *Simeon*: These were the Sons of *Mary* the Wife of *Cleophas*, whom the Gospel call the *Sister*, that is, the near *Kinswoman* of the blessed *Virgin*, and therefore her Sons are called our Saviour's *Brethren*, according to the usual Scripture Phrase, by which those that are near a-kin are called *Brothers* and *Sisters*.

If you ask me how I prove that *Mary* the Wife of *Cleophas* was Mother to *James* and *Joses*, &c. I prove it evidently, by comparing the Gospels together: St. *Matthew*, Chap. xxvii. Ver. 56. acquaints us, that amongst the Women who had followed our Saviour from *Galilee*, ministering to him, and who were present at his Death, were *Mary Magdalene*, and *Mary the mother of James and Joses*, &c. which same Thing is attested by St. *Mark*, Chap. xv. Ver. 40. Now St. *John* xix. 25. expressly informs us,

238 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

us that this *Mary*, who stood by the Cross, was *Sister* to the blessed Virgin, and Wife of *Cleophas*: So that *James*, *Joses*, &c. as 'tis manifest from the Gospel, were not Children of our Lady, but of her Kinswoman *Mary*, the Wife of *Cleophas*.

Q. But why then is our Saviour called her *First-born*, St. *Matt.* i. 25. and St. *Luke* ii. 7.

A. 'Tis a *Hebrew* Phrase, not signifying that any were *born after* him, but that no one was *born before* him.

Q. And why is it said of St. *Joseph*, St. *Matt.* i. 25. that *he knew her not till she had brought forth*, &c.?

A. This also was said, according to a Propriety of Speech amongst the *Hebrews*, to signify what was not done before, without meddling with the Question what was done after? this latter being foreign to the great Point which the Evangelist had then in View, which was, to assure us that *Christ* was born of a Virgin. We have Examples of the like Expressions in the *Old Testament*; as when, *Pf.* cix. (*aliàs cx.*) 'tis said, *The Lord said to my Lord, sit thou on my right-hand till I make thy enemies thy footstool.* Will he therefore cease to sit at the Right-hand of his Father, after his Enemies are made his Footstool? No certainly.

Q. What is the common Address which the Church makes to the blessed Virgin *Mary*?

A. The Angelical Salutation, or the *Hail Mary*: A great Part of which is taken out of the Gospel, St. *Luke* i. 26 and 42; and the other Part is added by the Church to beg the Prayers of the blessed Virgin for us Sinners.

Q. Why do Catholicks so often repeat the *Hail Mary*?

A. To commemorate the Incarnation of the Son of God; to honour his blessed Mother, and to desire her Prayers.

Q. What

Q. What is the Meaning of the *Beads*?

A. 'Tis a Devotion consisting of a certain Number of *Our Fathers* and *Hail Maries*, directed for the obtaining of Blessings from God, thro' the Prayers and Intercession of our Lady.

Q. But is it not highly absurd, that, according to the common Way of saying the *Beads*, there are repeated ten *Hail Maries* for one *Our Father*?

A. It would be absurd indeed, and blasphemous too, if the Meaning of this were to signify that the blessed Virgin is either more powerful or more merciful than her Son; or that we have a greater Confidence in her than in him: But we are far from any such Notions.

Q. Why then is the *Hail Mary* repeated so much oftner in the *Beads* than the *Lord's Prayer*?

A. Because the *Beads* being a Devotion particularly instituted to commemorate the Incarnation of *Christ*, and to honour him in his blessed Mother, it was thought proper to repeat so much the oftner that Prayer which is particularly adapted to these Ends. In the mean Time it may be proper to take Notice, 1st, That if in the *Beads* there be ten *Hail Maries* said for one *Our Father*, in the Mass, and Office of the Church, almost all the Prayers are directed to God alone. 2^{dly}, That every *Hail Mary*, both by the Nature of the Prayer, and the Intention of the Church, is directed more to the Honour of the Son than of the Mother; as well because the Church, in honouring the Mother, has principally in View the Honour of the Son; as also, because this Prayer particularly relates to the Incarnation of *Christ*: And if withal it begs the Prayers of the blessed Virgin, 'tis plain that he is more honoured to whom we desire she should address her Prayers, than she, whom we only desire to pray for us.

To

To which if we add that her Prayers are ten Times better and more acceptable to God, than ours, it will appear no ways absurd that we should so frequently desire her Prayers. For as to the Repetition of the same Prayer, 'tis what is recommended to us by the Example of our Lord, St. *Matt.* xxvi. 42, 44, &c. and has nothing of Absurdity in it.

Q. What is the Meaning of the *Rosary*?

A. The *Rosary* is a Method of saying the Beads, so as to meditate upon the Incarnation, Passion, and Resurrection of *Christ*. And 'tis divided into three Parts, each Part consisting of five Mysteries, to be contemplated during the repeating of five Decads or Tens upon the Beads. The first five are called the five *joyful* Mysteries; viz. the *Annunciation*, when our Lord was first conceived in his Mother's Womb; the *Visitation*, when the blessed Virgin visited her Kinswoman St. *Elizabeth*, and by her was declared blessed among Women, &c. the *Nativity* of our Lord; his *Presentation* in the Temple, together with the *Purification* of the blessed Virgin; and his being found in the Temple in the Midst of the Doctors, &c. The five next are called the *dolorous* or *sorrowful* Mysteries, as having Relation to the Passion of *Christ*; and are his *Prayer and Agony* in the Garden; his being *scourged* at the Pillar; his *Crowning* with Thorns; his *Carriage* of his *Cross*; and his *Crucifixion* and *Death*: The five last are called the five *glorious* Mysteries, viz. the *Resurrection* of our Lord; his *Ascension* into Heaven; the *Coming* of the Holy Ghost; the *Assumption* of the blessed Virgin; and her *Coronation*; together with the eternal Glory of the Saints in the Kingdom of Heaven.

Q. What is the Meaning of giving three Tolls with the Bells every Morning, Noon and Night, in all Catholick Countries?

A. This

A. This is to remind the Faithful of the great Mystery of the Incarnation of the Son of God; and 'tis a Practice of all good Christians, when they hear these Bells, to perform the Devotion which we call the *Angelus Domini*.

Q. What is this Devotion, and in what Manner is it performed?

A. The Bell tolls three Times, with a short Space between each Time. At the first Toll we say, *The Angel of the Lord declared to Mary, and she conceived of the Holy Ghost*; then we say the *Hail Mary*, &c. At the second Toll we say, *Behold the Handmaid of the Lord, be it done to me according to thy Word: Hail Mary*, &c. At the third Toll we say, *And the Word was made Flesh, and dwelt amongst us; Hail Mary*, &c. Then we conclude with the following Prayer.

POUR forth, we beseech thee, O Lord, thy Grace into our Hearts, that we, to whom the Incarnation of Christ thy Son was made known by the Message of an Angel, may, by his Passion and Cross, be brought to the Glory of his Resurrection. Thro' the same Christ our Lord. Amen.

This Devotion is used in all Catholick Countries, and is called the *Angelus Domini*, from the first Words, *The Angel of the Lord*, &c.

C H A P. XXVI.

Of the Use and Veneration of Relicks in the Catholick Church.

Q. **W**HAT do you mean by *Relicks*?

A. The dead Bodies or Bones of the Saints we call *Relicks*; as also, whatever other Things have belonged to them in their mortal Life.

M

Q. And

Q. And what is the Doctrine and Practice of the Church with Regard to these Things?

A. We keep such Things as these with a religious Respect and Veneration, for the Sake of those to whom they have belonged, but principally for the Sake of him to whom the Saints themselves belonged; that is, for the greater Glory of God, who is glorious in his Saints, and to whom is referred all the Honour that is given to his Saints.

Q. What Reason has the Church for shewing this Respect to the dead Bodies or Bones of the Saints?

A. 1st, Because they have been the Victims, and the living Temples of God, in which his Divine Majesty has, in a particular Manner, inhabited, and which he has sanctified by his Presence and Grace: And therefore, if God required of *Moses*, *Exod. iii. 5.* and of *Joshua*, *Josh. v. 15.* to loose their Shoes from off their Feet, in Respect to the Ground on which they stood, as being render'd *holy* by his Presence, or that of his Angels, we must conclude that it is agreeable to his Divine Majesty, that we should testify the like Honour to that venerable Earth of the Bodies of his Saints, which he in such an extraordinary Manner has sanctified, by abiding in them as in his Temples.

2^{dly}, We know that the Bodies of the Saints are pre-ordained to a happy Resurrection and eternal Glory; and upon this Account also deserve our Respect.

3^{dly}, The Bodies and other Relicks of the Saints have been, and are daily the Instruments of the Power of God, for the working of innumerable Miracles; which God, who is Truth and Sanctity itself, would never have effected, if it had not been agreeable to him that we should honour and respect these precious Remnants of his Servants.

4^{thly},

4thly, The Relicks and Shrines of the Martyrs and other Saints serve very much to encourage the Faithful to an Imitation of their Virtues, and to help to raise their Souls from the Love of Things present and temporal, to the Love of Things eternal.

Q. Did the Primitive Christians shew this Respect to the Relicks of the Saints?

A. Yes: Nothing is more evident, from all Kind of Monuments of Antiquity, than that the Veneration of the Relicks of the Saints is one of the most antient Things in Christianity. The learned Church-Historian *Eusebius*, L. 7. C. 19. relates, that St. *James's* Chair was kept with great Veneration by the Christians of *Jerusalem*, from the Apostles Time, till the Days in which the Historian wrote; that is, till the Beginning of the fourth Century. The Acts of the Martyrdom of St. *Ignatius*, Bishop of *Antioch*, Disciple of the Apostles, who suffered at *Rome*, Anno 107, written by the Christians who accompanied him to *Rome*, bear record, that his holy Relicks were carried to *Antioch* by the Christians, and left to that Church as an *inestimable Treasure*. The Christians of *Smyrna*, in the Account that they give of the Martyrdom of their holy Bishop St. *Polycarp*, Disciple of the Apostles, inform us, that the Faithful carried away his Relicks, which they valued more than Gold and precious Stones, *Euseb. Hist. L. 4. C. 15.* And that this Veneration of Relicks was approved by all the most holy and most learned Bishops and Doctors of the Church, and condemned by none but Infidels and Hereticks, such as *Julian* the Apostate, *Eunomius* and *Vigilantius*, may be seen in the Writings of the holy Fathers. See St. *Basil*, in Ps. 115. T. 1. p. 274. *Homil. 5. in Martyrem Julianum*, p. 217. *Hom. 20. in 40 Martyres*, p. 479. St. *Gregory Nyssen*, *Orat. de S. Theodora Martyre*, T. 3. St. *Gregory Nazianzen*, *Orat. 3. in Julianum*, T. 1. p. 76, 77. St. *Cyril of Jerusalem*, *Catech. 18.*

244 *The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c.*

St. *John Chrysostome*, *ad Pap. Ant. Hom.* 40, 47, 59. *L. contra Gentiles*, *Hom.* 26. in 2 *Cor.* 2, &c. St. *Ambrose*, *Epist.* 22. St. *Hierome*, *L. adversus Vigilantium*. St. *Augustine*, *L.* 9. *Confess.* C. 7. *Serm.* 92. *de Diversis*, *L.* 22. *of the City of God*, C. 8. *Epist.* 103. *Theodoret*, *L.* 8. *contra Græcos*, &c. To pass over many others, who all agree in approving this Practice; and all or most of them bear Record, that God also has approved it by innumerable Miracles.

Q. But have you any Instance in Scripture of Miracles wrought by the Bones of God's Saints, or other Things belonging to them?

A. Yes; we read 2 (*aliàs* 4) *Kings* xiii. 21, of a dead Man raised to Life by the Touch of the Bones of the Prophet *Elisha*; and *Acts* xix. 12. that from the body of Paul were brought unto the sick handkerchiefs or aprons, and the diseases departed from them, and the evil spirits went out of them.

Q. But does not *Christ* reprehend the Scribes and Pharisees for building up and adorning the Sepulchres of the Prophets, St. *Matt.* xxiii. 29, 30, 31?

A. He does not reprehend them for the Action, which in it itself was good, but for their wicked Dispositions; inasmuch as, whilst they would seem to honour the Prophets, and thereby to obtain the Favour of the People, they sought all the while to fill up the Measure of their Fathers, by persecuting unto Death the Lord of Prophets.

Q. What Kind of Honour does the Catholick Church allow to Relicks?

A. An inferior and relative Honour, as to Things belonging to God's Saints; but by no Means divine Honour.

Q. But are not Candles allowed to burn before them? And are they not sometimes fumed with Incense?

A. These

A. These are Honours indeed, but such as we may give to one another; as in effect we incense in the Church both Clergy and People, and burn Candles to our Princes upon Occasions of Joy: For since these Honours are no ways appropriated to God, either by the Nature of the Things in themselves, or by any divine Ordinance, why may not the Church of God allow them to the Relicks of the Saints? not as divine Honours, but as Tokens of our Love and Respect to them; of our Joy for the Triumphs of *Christ* in his Saints, and as Emblems of their eternal Life, Light, and Glory.

Q. Does not this Practice of the Veneration of Relicks expose the Faithful to the Danger of Idolatry and Superstition, by honouring false Relicks?

A. No; 1st, Because the Church of God, by her publick Canons and her zealous Pastors, takes what Care she can to prevent such Impositions. 2^{dly}, Because, if by the Wickedness of Men it should sometimes happen that the Faithful should be imposed upon in this Regard, so far as to honour a false Relick for a true one, there would be neither any Idolatry nor Superstition in the Case; but a Mistake, on their Part, innocent; as when a charitable Christian relieves an Impostor or a Hypocrite, innocently believing him to be a real Object of Charity.

Q. But if the Church has so much Zeal against false Relicks, how comes she to tolerate them in so many Cases, as when divers Churches pretend to possess the Body of the same Saint; for some or other of these must be false Relicks?

A. You are too hasty in concluding that these must needs be *false Relicks*; 1st, Because it often happens, that some Part of the Body of a Saint is in one Place, and some Part in another; in which Case both Places claim the Body of such a Saint, tho' they really possess only a Part of it; and yet

neither one nor the other is therefore to be charged with honouring false Relicks. *2dly*, Many of the Saints and Martyrs have borne the same Name; and hence it easily happens, that Relicks, which indeed belong to one Saint, are attributed to another of the same Name. *3dly*, There have been many antient Martyrs, whose Names at present are not known, whose Relicks nevertheless have been all along honoured by the Church: Now it was easy that the Ignorance of some, or the Vanity of others, might attribute to them the Names of other Saints; so that all these may be true Relicks, notwithstanding they do not all belong to the Saints to whom they are attributed.

2. What is the Meaning of making *Pilgrimages* to the Shrines or other Memorials of the Saints?

A. To honour God in his Saints, to excite Devotion by the Sight of those Places sanctified by these heavenly Pledges, and to obtain Graces and Blessings of God by the Prayers of his Saints: For tho' God be every-where, and his Bounty and Mercy be not confined to any particular Place, yet the Experience of all past Ages convince us, that it is his holy Will and Pleasure to bestow his Favours more plentifully, and to shew more frequent and miraculous Effects of his Power and Goodness in some Places than in others. See St. *Augustine*, *Epist.* 137.

2. Have not Catholicks a more than ordinary Veneration for the Wood of the Cross, the Nails, Thorns, and other Instruments of *Christ's* Passion?

A. Yes, they have; because these Things have so close a Relation to the Passion of *Christ*, by which we were redeemed, and have been sanctified by the Blood of our Redeemer.

C H A P. XXVII.

Of the Use of Pictures and Images in the Catholick Church.

2. **W**HAT is the Doctrine of the Church with regard to Pictures or Images of *Christ* and his Saints?

A. 1st, That it is good to keep them and retain them, and to have them in Churches, not only for Ornament, and for the Instruction of the Ignorant, but for the Honour and Remembrance of *Christ* and his Saints, and for to help to raise our Thoughts and our Hearts to heavenly Things. 2^{dly}, That there is a relative Honour due to them, by reason of the Persons whom they represent. See the second Council of Nice, Act 7. and the Council of Trent, Sess. 25.

2. Does the Catholick Church give *divine Worship* to the Pictures or Images of *Christ* or his Saints?

A. No, by no means. The second Council of Nice, in the 7th Action or Session, has expressly declared, that *divine Worship* is not to be given them; to which the Council of Trent, in the 25th Session, has added, that we are not to believe that there is any Divinity or Power in them for which they are to be worshipped; and that we are not to pray to them, nor put our Trust or Confidence in them.

2. But does not the first (or second) Commandment absolutely forbid the making of any Image, or the Likeness of any Thing in Heaven, Earth, or Seas?

A. No: It only forbids the making of *Idols*, that is, of such Images as are made for Gods, and are worshipped as such; or in which a Divinity or divine Virtue and Power is believed to reside. Hence

the antient Version of the *Septuagint*, (which is venerable, by having been made use of by the Apostles themselves) renders the Words of the Commandment thus, *Thou shalt not make to thyself an Idol, &c.* And that God does not absolutely forbid the making of the *Likeness* of any thing, is not only the general Belief of all Christians, who carry about with them without Scruple the *Likeness* of their Kings in the current Coin of their respective Countries, but is visible from Scripture, wherein God commanded the making of two *Cherubims* of beaten Gold to be placed over the Ark of the Covenant in the very Sanctuary, *Exod. xxv. 18, 19, 20, 21*; and in like Manner commanded the making of the *brazen Serpent*, for the healing of those who were bit by the fiery Serpents, *Numb. xxi. 8, 9.* which Serpent was an Emblem of *Christ*, *St. John iii. 14, 15.*

Q. But at least does not God forbid by this Commandment all Honour or Reverence to Pictures or Images?

A. He forbids all Honour or Reverence to *Idols* or *Image Gods*, but not the relative Honour which Catholicks shew to the Pictures of *Christ* and his Saints, for the Sake of the Persons represented by them; for it is visible, that the same Images which by this Commandment are forbid to be honoured, are also by the express Words of the Commandment forbid to be made. Now few or no Christians suppose that the Pictures of *Christ* or his Saints are forbid to be made; therefore they cannot infer from this Commandment, that they are forbid to be honoured, since this Commandment does not speak of them at all, but only of *Idols* or *Images* set up to be worshipped for Gods.

Q. What then do you mean by this *relative Honour*, which you allow to the Pictures of *Christ* and his Saints?

A. By

A. By a *relative Honour* I mean an Honour which is given to a Thing, not for any intrinsick Excellence or Dignity in the Thing itself, but only for the *Relation* which it has to something else, which it represents or brings to our Remembrance; as when Christians bow to the Name of *Jesus*, which is an Image or Remembrance of our Saviour to the Ear, as the Crucifix is to the Eye.

Q. Have you any Instances of this Kind of *relative Honour* allowed by Protestants?

A. Yes: In the Honour they give to the Name of *Jesus*, to their Churches, to the Altar, to the Bible, to the Symbols of Bread and Wine in the Sacrament, to the King's Chair, &c. Such also was the Honour which the *Jews* gave to the Ark and Cherubims, to the Sanctuary, &c. and which *Moses* and *Joshua* gave to the Land on which they stood, as being *holy Ground*, *Exod.* iii. 5. *Josh.* v. 15.

Q. How do you prove that there is a *relative Honour* due to the Images or Pictures of *Christ* and his Saints?

A. Because it is evidently agreeable, as well to Nature and Reason, as to Piety and Religion, to express our Esteem and Affection for those whom we honour and love, by setting a Value upon all Things that belong to them, or have any Relation to them. Thus good Christians, that love God with their whole Hearts, honour all Things that are dedicated to his Service, or that are Memorials of him, or have a Relation to him; as his Temples, his Altars, his Name, his Word, his Sacraments, the sacred Vessels, &c. And thus it is that we honour the Effigies of *Christ*, of his blessed Mother, and of the Saints, as Memorials and Representations of them, and as Helps to raise our Thoughts to them. And is it not thus that a loyal Subject, a dutiful Child, a loving Friend, value the Pictures of their King, Father, or Friend? And would not

these very Men, that make no Scruple of abusing the Image of *Christ*, severely punish such as would abuse the Image of the King?

Q. Do you then allow of *worshipping God by an Image*?

A. If you mean by *worshipping God by an Image*, the raising up our Hearts to God, by, or upon Occasion of the Sight of the Picture or Image; or the referring to *Jesus Christ* and to his Worship whatever Honour or Respect we shew to his Picture or Image; there can be no Reason to disallow the worshipping of God by a Picture or Image. But if *worshipping God by an Image* be so understood, as if the Divinity in some particular Manner resided in the Image; or some *Virtue* or *Power*, for which it should be worshipped, or trusted in; or as if our Worship or Prayers were believed to be more acceptable to God, and to have more Influence upon him, when offer'd or presented by or thro' any such Image; such Kind of worshipping God by an Image is not only not allow'd, but condemn'd by the Catholick Church. See the *Council of Trent*, *Sess.* 25.

Q. What means then the blessing of Crucifixes, or other Images, if no *Virtue* or *Power* be believed to reside in them after they are bless'd?

A. The Church blesses all Things that are used about the Altar; not by way of imparting to them any intrinsic Power or *Virtue*, but by way of dedicating them to the Divine Service, and begging God's Blessing for those that make use of them; so that whatever Advantage may be supposed in the Use of them after they are bless'd more than before, is wholly to be attributed to the Prayers of the Church.

Q. But are there not certain Images to which great Miracles are attributed; therefore Catholicks must believe, that in these at least there is some Divinity, *Virtue*, or *Power*?

A. There

A. There have been many Instances of undoubted Miracles wrought by God in the Churches of the blessed Virgin, and other Saints, in Favour of those that have sought their Prayers and Intercession before their Pictures or Images. But these Miracles are not to be attributed to any Divinity or Power in the Image, but to the Almighty Power of God, moved to work these Wonders by the Prayers of his Saints, and bearing Testimony thereby to the Faith of his Church, and shewing his Approbation of her religious Practices.

Q. What do you think of the Images or Pictures of God the Father, or of the blessed Trinity?

A. I think that no corporal Image can bear a *Resemblance* with the Divinity; and consequently that it would be unlawful to pretend to make any such *Likeness* or *Resemblance*. But where no such *Resemblance* is pretended, I don't take it to be more unlawful to paint God the Father under the Figure of a venerable old Man; because he was so represented in the Vision of *Daniel*, chap. vii. ver. 9. than it is to paint the Holy Ghost under the Figure of a Dove; because he appeared so when *Christ* was baptized, St. *Matt.* iii. 16.

Q. What do you think of the Charge of Idolatry layed to the Church by some of her Adversaries, upon Account of the Use and Veneration of Images?

A. I think that nothing could be more visibly unjust than such a Charge. Since *Idolatry* is giving divine Honour and Service to an Idol, or false God; which is far from being the Case of the Catholick Church. We acknowledge one only true and living God in three Persons, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost: To him alone do we offer Sacrifice or any other divine Honours. Him alone do we adore in Spirit and Truth. Whatever else in Heaven or on Earth we religiously honour, we honour for his Sake, and
for.

for the Relation it has to him. And as for the Worship of Idols or false Gods, it has been banish'd out of the World by the Labours and Preaching of our Church alone: So far are we from abetting Idolatry.

2. What then do you think of the Parallel which some would make between the Heathen and Catholick Worship?

A. I think that 'tis infinitely unjust and unreasonable, as must appear to any unprejudiced Minds by the following Remarks.

1st, Catholicks adore and offer Sacrifice to *one only true and living God*: The Heathens adored and offered Sacrifice to *many false Gods*.

2^{dly}, The supreme Object of Catholick Worship is the sacred Trinity, blessed for evermore: The supreme Object of the Heathen Worship was the *Sun*, or some other Part of God's Creation; or else some wicked Man, or more wicked Devil. For Heathen Idolatry was, according to the Apostle, Rom. i. 25. *changing the truth of God into a lie, and worshipping and serving the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed for ever*. The *Sun* and his Symbol the *Fire* was of old the Sovereign God of the *Persians*; as he was of late of the Inhabitants of *Peru*; The same was worshipped as their chief God by the *Plænicians* under the Name of *Baal*; by the *Ammonites* under the Name of *Moloch*; by the *Moabites* under the Name of *Chamos*; by the *Accaronites* under the Name of *Belzebug*; by those of *Gaza* under the Name of *Marnas*, &c. according to *Vossius*, *Selden*, and the whole Nation of the Criticks, alledg'd by the Protestant Bishop *Parker*, *Test.* p. 97. Him they called the *Xing of Heaven*; as they call'd the *Moon*, or *Astarte*, the *Queen of Heaven*. Of the like Nature was the sovereign Object of the Worship of the *Egyptians*, viz. *Ammon* the *Ram*, and *Osyris* the *Bull*, which are the two first Signs of

of the *Zodiac*, and were worshipped as Symbols of the Sun, according to Bishop *Parker*, *Ibidem*. The chief God of the *Grecians* and Heathen *Romans* was *Jupiter*, who was originally a King that reigned in *Crete*; as the wiser Heathens have acknowledged. He was not esteemed *eternal* by any of them, but the Son of *Saturn* (*χρόνος*) that is, of *Time*; and by much posterior to Heaven and Earth. As for his Idols and Oracles, he who gave Answers thereby was no God, but an Arch-Devil, as Christians have ever believed.

3dly, Catholics honour, tho' not with any Part of *divine Worship*, the Angels and Saints of God, as belonging to him, and as truly worthy of Honour, upon Account of the excellent Gifts of *Grace* and *Glory* received from him: But they ask nothing of them but what they know must come from God's Hands; and therefore their usual Address to them is, *Pray for us*. The Heathens not only gave the sovereign Worship of Adoration and Sacrifice to their inferior Deities, but looked upon them in many Respects independent of their chief God (whilst they made him himself dependent upon Fate) and accordingly they addressed themselves to them not as Intercessors (for in the whole Heathen Theology we shall scarce once find an *Ora pro nobis*) but as Distributors of Blessings and Gifts to Men, according to their different Offices and Powers.

4thly, Those whom the Catholics honour with an inferior Veneration for God's Sake, are indeed the Ministers and Servants of the one true God. The inferior Deities of the Heathens were wicked Wretches, such as *Mars*, *Bacchus*, *Hercules*, *Venus*, &c. or rather Devils, as we learn from many Texts of Scripture: See *Levit. xvii. 7. Deuter. xxxii. 17. Ps. cvi. 37. 1 Cor. x. 20.*

5thly, As to *Images*; not to speak of the immense Distance between the Objects represented by Catholics

Catholicks and by Heathens, 'tis certain that the Heathens, at the least the generality of them, believ'd the very *Idols* to be Gods; for which see *Gen.* xxxii. 30, 32. *Exod.* xx. 23. *Levit.* xix. 4. *Judges* xviii. 24. 2 *Kings* xvii. 29. and xix. 18. *Isai.* xlv. 17. *Jerem.* ii. 26, 27. *Acts* xix. 26. And as for those who would seem to be more refined in their Notion and Worship, they believ'd at least that the *Idols* by Consecration became the Bodies of their Gods, the Places of their peculiar Residence, the Symbols of their Presence, and the Seats of their Power. And accordingly these as well as the others offer'd Prayers and Sacrifice to the *Idols*, and gave them the Names of the Deities which they worship'd in them. Now we neither believe our Images to be Gods, nor to be the Bodies of God, nor the peculiar Places of his Residence, nor Symbols of his Presence, nor to have any Power or Virtue in them, nor do we put our Trust in them, or pray to them, or offer Sacrifice or other divine Honours to them. Therefore there is no Similitude between the Heathen Worship and ours.

As for the *Jewish* Worship of the Golden Calf in the Wilderness, and afterwards of the Calves of *Jeroboam* at *Bethel* and *Dan*, which some are willing to extenuate, as if they did not take these Images to be Gods, but thereby only meant to worship the God of *Israel*, the Scripture gives us a quite different Account; witness these Texts, *Exod.* xxxii. 8. *They have made them a molten calf, and have worshipped it, and have sacrificed thereunto, and said, These be thy Gods, O Israel, which have brought thee up out of the Land of Egypt.* Ver. 31. *They have made them gods of gold.* Psalm cvi. (alias cv.) 19, 20, 21. *They made a calf in Horeb, and worshipped the molten image: they changed their glory (their God) into the similitude of an ox that eateth grass; they for-*

got God their Saviour, which had done great things in Egypt. Acts vii. 39, 40, 41. To whom our fathers would not obey, but thrust him from them, and in their hearts turned back again into Egypt, saying to Aaron, Make us gods to go before us—And they made a calf in those days, and offered sacrifice to the idol, and rejoiced in the works of their own hands. Then God turned and gave them up to worship the host of heaven. And the Calves of Jeroboam, 1 Kings xii. 28. He made two calves of gold, and said unto them,—Behold thy gods, O Israel, who brought thee up out of the land of Egypt; and Ver. 32. He sacrificed to the calves that he had made. And 1 Kings xiv. 9. he is accused by the Prophet Abijah to have gone and made him other gods and molten images, and to have cast the Lord behind his back. 2 Chron. xi. 15. He ordained him priests for the high places, and for the devils, and for the calves which he had made. 2 Chron. xiii. 8. There are with you golden calves, which Jeroboam made unto you for gods. Ver. 9. Have ye not cast out the Priests, &c. and made you Priests after the manner of the nations—of them that be no gods. Ver. 10. But as for us, the Lord is our God.

But if any one will be contentious, and maintain that these idolatrous *Israelites* intended to worship in these Calves, not the *Egyptian Osyris*, nor any other false Divinity, but the God of *Israel*, because *Aaron* (who made the Calf against his Will by Compulsion of the People) seems to give it the proper Name of the God of *Israel*, *Exod. xxxii. 5. To-morrow is a feast to the Lord.* Supposing this to be true, their Worship would still have been idolatrous, and these Calves properly *Idols*; because they believed (as is manifest from the Text above quoted) these very Calves to be Gods; or, if you will have it so, to be the Lord of *Israel*; or, at least, that the Divinity had upon their Dedication insinuated itself into them; and accordingly they gave divine Praises and offered

offered Sacrifice to them. Now, to believe any Image to be God, or to imagine any Divinity, Power or Virtue in it, for which it is to be worshipped, or to offer Sacrifice to an Image, is an idolatrous Worship, and cannot be excused, however the Image be pretended by its Worshippers to represent the true God.

Q. Is there not in one of the Church-Hymns, and in one of the Anthems of the *Roman Breviary*, a Prayer to the Cross? How then do you maintain that the Catholick Church does not attribute any Power to Images, nor prays to them?

A. The Prayer you speak of is not directed to the Wood of the Cross, but to *Christ* crucified, by a Figure of Speech, as when *St. Paul* says, *Gal. vi. 14.* that he glories in the Cross of *Jesus Christ*.

C H A P. XXVIII.

Of Exorcisms, and Benedictions or Blessings of Creatures in the Catholick Church, and of the Use of Holy Water.

Q. WHAT do you mean by *Exorcisms*?

A. The Rites and Prayers instituted by the Church for the casting out Devils, or restraining them from hurting Persons, disquieting Places, or abusing any of God's Creatures to our Harm.

Q. Has *Christ* given his Church any such Power over the Devils?

A. Yes he has: See *St. Matt. x. 1*; *St. Mark iii. 13*; *St. Luke ix. 1*; where this Power was given to the Apostles; and to the seventy-two Disciples, *St. Luke x. 19*; and to other Believers, *St. Mark xvi. 17*. And that this Power was not to die with the Apostles, nor to cease after the Apostolick Age, we learn

learn from the perpetual Practice of the Church, and the Experience of all Ages.

Q. What is the Meaning of blessing so many Things in the Catholick Church?

A. We bless Churches, and other Places set aside for divine Service; Altars, Chalices, Vestments, &c. by Way of devoting them to holy Uses: We bless our Meats, and other inanimate Things which God has given us for our Use, that we may use them with Moderation, in a Manner agreeable to God's Institution; that they may be serviceable to us, and that the Devil may have no Power to abuse them to our Prejudice: We bless Candles, Salt, Water, &c. by Way of begging of God that such as religiously use them may obtain his Blessing, &c.

Q. But does it not favour of Superstition to attribute any Virtue to such inanimate Things as Blessed Candles, Holy Water, *Agnus Dei's*, &c.?

A. 'Tis no Superstition to look for a good Effect from the Prayers of the Church of God; and 'tis in Virtue of these Prayers that we hope for Benefit from these Things, when used with Faith; and daily Experience shews us that our Hopes are not vain.

Q. What do you mean by *Agnus Dei's*?

A. Wax stamped with the Image of the Lamb of God, blessed by the Pope with solemn Prayers, and anointed with the holy Chrism.

Q. What Warrant have you in Scripture for blessing inanimate Things?

A. 1 Tim. iv. 4, 5. *Every creature of God is good, and nothing to be refused, if it be received with thanksgiving: for it is SANCTIFIED by the word of God and prayer.*

Q. Why does the Church make Use of the Sign of the Cross in all her Blessings and Consecrations?

A. To signify that all our Good must come through *Christ* crucified.

Q. What do you mean by *Holy Water*?

A. Water

A. Water sanctified by the Word of God and Prayer.

Q. What is the Use of *Holy Water*?

A. It is blessed by the Church with solemn Prayers, to beg God's Protection and Blessing upon those that use it, and in particular that they may be defended from all the Powers of Darknes.

Q. Is the Use of *Holy Water* very ancient in the Church of God?

A. 'Tis very ancient, since it is mentioned in the *Apostolical Constitutions*, L. 8. C. 29. And as for our *English Nation* in particular, 'tis visible, from the Epistles of *St. Gregory the Great*, L. 9. *Epist.* 71. that we received it together with our Christianity.

Q. Have the Holy Fathers and ancient Church-Writers left upon Record any Miracles done by *Holy Water*?

A. Yes they have; more particularly upon those Occasions when it has been used against magical Enchantments and the Power of the Devil. See Instances in *St. Epiphanius*, *Hæc.* 30. in *St. Hierome*, in the *Life of St. Hilarion*; in *Theodoret*, L. 5. *Hist. Eccl.* C. 21; in *Paladius*, *Histor. Laus.* C. 6, &c.

Q. What is the Order and Manner of making *Holy Water*?

A. 1st, The Priest signs himself with the Sign of the Cross, saying, *Our Help is in the Name of the Lord.* Answ. *Who made Heaven and Earth.* Then he proceeds to the Blessing of the Salt which is to be mingled with the Water, saying,

The Exorcism of the Salt.

I Exorcise thee, O Creature of Salt, by the living ✠ God, by the true ✠ God, by the holy ✠ God; by that God, who by the Prophet *Elisba* commanded thee to be cast into the Water to cure its Barrenness; that thou may'st by this Exorcism

Exorcism be made beneficial to the Faithful; and become to all them that make use of thee, healthful both to Soul and Body; and that in what Place soever thou shalt be sprinkled, all Illusions, and Wickedness, and crafty Wiles of Satan may be chased away, and depart from that Place; and every unclean Spirit commanded in his Name, who is to come to judge the Living and the Dead, and the World by Fire. *Amen.*

Let us Pray.

O Almighty and everlasting God, we most humbly implore thy infinite Mercy, that thou would'st vouchsafe by thy Piety to bless ✠ and to sanctify ✠ this thy Creature of Salt, which thou hast given for the Use of Mankind: That it may be to all that take it for the Health of Mind and Body; and that whatever shall be touched or sprinkled with it may be free from all Uncleaness, and from all Assaults of wicked Spirits, through our Lord *Jesus Christ, &c.*

After this the Priest proceeds to the blessing of the Water, as follows:

The Exorcism of the Water.

I Exorcise thee, O Creature of Water, in the Name of God, ✠ the Father Almighty, and in the Name of *Jesus Christ* ✠ his Son our Lord, and in the Virtue of the Holy ✠ Ghost, that thou may'st by this Exorcism have Power to chase away all the Power of the Enemy; that thou may'st be enabled to cast him out, and put him to flight with all his apostate Angels, by the Virtue of the same *Jesus Christ* our Lord, who is to come to judge the Living and the Dead, and the World by Fire. *Amen.*

Let us pray.

O God, who for the Benefit of Mankind hast made use of Water in the greatest Mysteries, mercifully

mercifully hear our Prayers, and impart the Virtue of thy Blessing ✠ to this Element, prepar'd by many kinds of Purifications: That this thy Creature, made use of in thy Mysteries, may receive the Effect of thy divine Grace, for the chasing away Devils and curing Diseases; and that whatsoever shall be sprinkled with this Water in the Houses or the Places of the Faithful, may be free from all Uncleanneſs, and delivered from Evil: Let no pestilential Spirit reside there, no infectious Air; let all the Snares of the hidden Enemy fly away; and may whatever envies the Safety and Repose of the Inhabitants of that Place be put to flight by the sprinkling of this Water, that the Welfare which we seek by the Invocation of thy Holy Name may be defended from all Sorts of Assaults. Thro' our Lord *Jefus Chriſt*, &c.

Then the Priest mingles the Salt with the Water, ſaying,

MAY this Salt and Water be mixed together, in the Name of the Father ✠, and of the Son ✠, and of the Holy ✠ Ghost. *Amen.*

V. The Lord be with you.

R. And with thy Spirit.

Let us pray.

O God, the Author of invincible Power, King of an Empire that cannot be overcome, and for ever magnificently triumphant; who reſtrainest the Forces of the Adverſary, who defeateſt the Fury of the roaring Enemy, who mightily conquereſt his malicious Wiles; we pray and beſeech thee, O Lord, with Dread and Humility, to regard with a favourable Countenance this Creature of Salt and Water, to enlighten it with thy Bounty, and to ſanctify it with the Dew of thy Fatherly Goodneſs, that whereſoever it ſhall be ſprinkled, all Infeſtation of the unclean Spirit may depart, and all
Fear

The CATHOLICK CHRISTIAN, &c. 261

Fear of the venomous Serpent may be chased away, through the Invocation of thy Holy Name; and that the Presence of the Holy Ghost may be every where with us, who seek thy Mercy. Thro' our Lord *Jesus Christ*, &c.

The Blessing being ended, the Priest sprinkles himself and the People with this Water, saying,

Anthem. **T**HOU shalt sprinkle me, O Lord, with Hyssop, and I shall be cleansed; thou shalt wash me, and I shall be made whiter than Snow.

Psalml. **H**AVE Mercy on me, O God, according to thy great Mercy, &c.

Glory be to the Father, &c.

After which he repeats the Anthem, Thou shalt sprinkle, &c. Then returning to the Altar, he says,

V. O Lord shew us thy Mercy.

R. And give us thy Salvation.

V. O Lord hear my Prayer.

R. And let my Cry come to thee.

V. The Lord be with you.

R. And with thy Spirit.

Let us pray.

HEAR us, O Holy Lord, Almighty Father, Everlasting God, and vouchsafe to send thy Holy Angel from Heaven to guard, cherish, protect, visit, and defend all that dwell in this Habitation. Thro' *Christ* our Lord. *Amen.*

THE CONTENTS.

The P R E F A C E.

CHAP. I.	<i>Of the Sign of the Cross</i>	Page 1
CHAP. II.	<i>Of the Sacrament of Baptism</i>	4
CHAP. III.	<i>Of the Ceremonies of Baptism, and of the Manner of administering this Sacrament in the Catholick Church.</i>	12
CHAP. IV.	<i>Of the Sacrament of Confirmation, and of the Manner of administering it</i>	20
CHAP. V.	<i>Of the Sacrament of the Eucharist</i>	26
SECT. I.	<i>The first Proof of the real Presence from the Words of Christ at the first Institution of this blessed Sacrament</i>	28
SECT. II.	<i>The second Proof of the real Presence from St. John vi. 51, &c.</i>	37
SECT. III.	<i>Other Proofs of the real Presence of Christ's Body and Blood in the blessed Sacrament</i>	43
SECT. IV.	<i>Transubstantiation proved; Objections answered</i>	51
SECT. V.	<i>Of the Bread and Wine made use of in this Sacrament</i>	59
SECT. VI.	<i>Of Communion in one Kind</i>	61
SECT. VII.	<i>Of the Manner of administering this blessed Sacrament; of Devotion before and after Communion; of the Obligation of receiving it, and of its Effects</i>	66
SECT. VIII.	<i>Of the Worship of Christ in this Sacrament: Where also of Benedictions and Processions</i>	75
	CHAP.	

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. VI. Of the Sacrifice of the Mass	Page 78
CHAP. VII. Of hearing Mass: Where also of the Order and Ceremonies of the Mass, and the Devotion proper for that Time	86
CHAP. VIII. Of saying the Mass in Latin	105
CHAP. IX. Of the Sacrament of Penance: Of Confession, and the Preparation for it: Of Absolution, &c.	109
CHAP. X. Of Indulgences and Jubilees	124
CHAP. XI. Of the Sacrament of Extreme Unction	130
CHAP. XII. The Order of the Recommendation of a Soul that is just departing	134
CHAP. XIII. Of the Office for the Burial of the Dead	140
CHAP. XIV. Of Prayers for the Dead, and of Purgatory	144
CHAP. XV. Of the Sacrament of Holy Orders	152
CHAP. XVI. Of the Superiority of Bishops, and of the Supremacy of the Pope	155
CHAP. XVII. Of the Celibacy of the Clergy	166
CHAP. XVIII. Of Religious Orders and Confraternities	174
CHAP. XIX. Of the Sacrament of Matrimony, and of the Nuptial Benediction	186
CHAP. XX. Of the Churching of Women after Child-bearing	195
CHAP. XXI. Of the Fasts of the Catholick Church	197
SEC. I. Of Fasting and Abstinence in general	ibid.
SEC. II. Of the Fast of Lent	202
SEC. III. Of other Days of Fasting and Abstinence in the Catholick Church	207
CHAP. XXII. Of the Church Office, or the Canonical Hours of Prayer in the Catholick Church	209
CHAP. XXIII. Of the Festivals of the Catholick Church: Where also of the Holy Week, and the Ceremonies thereof	213
CHAP.	

The CONTENTS.

- CHAP. XXIV. *Of the Invocation of Angels and Saints* Page 224
- CHAP. XXV. *Of the Devotion of Catholics to the blessed Virgin Mary; of her perpetual Virginity; of the Beads, Rosary, and Angelus Domini* 234
- CHAP. XXVI. *Of the Use and Veneration of Relicks in the Catholick Church* 241
- CHAP. XXVII. *Of the Use of Pictures and Images in the Catholick Church* 247
- CHAP. XXVIII. *Of Exorcisms, and Benedictions or Blessings of Creatures in the Catholick Church, and of the Use of Holy Water* 256

4 AP 54

F I N I S.



nd
24
he
y ;
34
ks
41
res
47
ns
h,
56